



ZIM ACADEMY

# IELTS

## SPEAKING

### REVIEW

### VOL.6

Actual Tests in 2021

Suggested ideas

Band 7 sample answers

Topic vocabulary



ZIM ACADEMY

# IELTS SPEAKING REVIEW VOL.6

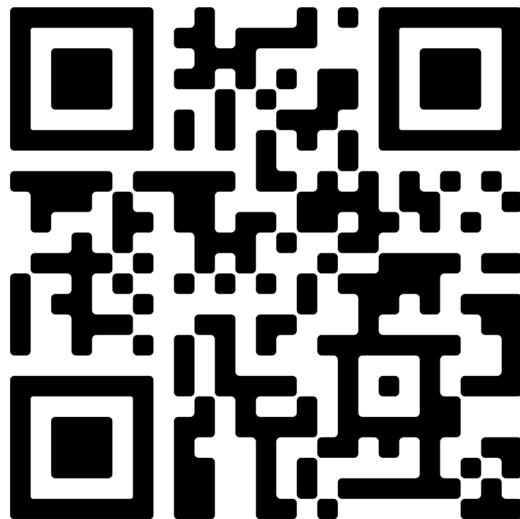
Actual Tests in 2021

Suggested ideas

Band 7 sample answers

Topic vocabulary

Scan mã QR bên dưới  
để ***truy cập zim.vn***



# Mục lục

Lời mở đầu .....	8
------------------	---

## IELTS Speaking Part 1

1. Taking a rest .....	10	25. Special costumes .....	36
2. Reading .....	11	26. Relax .....	37
3. TV program .....	12	27. Barbecue .....	38
4. Getting up early .....	13	28. Flowers .....	39
5. Singing .....	14	29. Advertisement .....	40
6. Decoration .....	15	30. Wild animals .....	41
7. Maths .....	16	31. Environment .....	42
8. Being Happy .....	17	32. Car trip .....	43
9. Sport .....	18	33. Primary School .....	44
10. Recycle .....	19	34. Wallet .....	45
11. Picnic .....	20	35. Festival .....	46
12. List .....	21	36. Holidays .....	47
13. Trees .....	22	37. Headphones .....	48
14. Museums .....	23	38. Weather .....	49
15. New Year celebrations .....	23	39. Colours .....	50
16. Work/ Study .....	24	40. Pets and animals .....	51
17. Home/Accommodation .....	27	41. Public garden and parks .....	52
18. Hometown .....	28	42. Science .....	53
19. The area you live in .....	29	43. Handwriting .....	54
20. Name .....	30	44. Mobile apps .....	55
21. Window view .....	31	45. Getting lost .....	56
22. Farming .....	32	46. Concentration .....	57
23. New Year .....	34	47. Shoes .....	58
24. Home country .....	35		

## IELTS Speaking Part 2, 3

1. Describe a skill that you think you can teach other people .....	60
2. Describe a time when you told your friend an important truth .....	62
3. Describe a piece of international news you recently heard .....	64
4. Describe a time you needed to use your imagination .....	66
5. Describe a polite person you know .....	78
6. Describe a time you made a promise to someone .....	70
7. Describe a special hotel you have stayed in .....	72
8. Describe a perfect job you would like to have in the future .....	74
9. Describe a home that you visited but did not want to live in .....	76

10. Describe an unforgettable bike trip you had .....	78
11. Describe a time when you gave advice to others .....	80
12. Describe a toy you liked in your childhood .....	82
13. Describe an art exhibition that you visited .....	84
14. Describe a time when you got close to wild animals .....	87
15. Describe a time when you had a problem with using a computer .....	90
16. Describe an article on health you read in a magazine or on the internet .....	93
17. Describe a famous person you are interested in .....	95
18. Describe a person who you think wears unusual clothes .....	97
19. Describe something important that has been kept in your family for a long time .....	99
20. Describe a thing that you bought and felt pleased about .....	101
21. Describe a kind of weather you like .....	103
22. Describe a live sport match that you have watched .....	105
23. Describe an interesting conversation .....	107
24. Describe a short trip you often take but do not like .....	109
25. Describe a time when you ate something for the first time .....	111
26. Describe a time when your computer broke down .....	113
27. Describe a time when you encouraged someone to do something that he/she didn't want to do .....	115
28. Describe an occasion when you lost your way .....	117
29. Describe a time you had to wait in line(queue up) for a long time .....	119
30. Describe a time when you felt bored .....	121
31. Describe a time you made a promise to someone .....	123
32. Describe a part of a city or town you enjoy spending time in .....	125
33. Describe an occasion when many people were smiling .....	127
34. Describe a tall building in your city you like or dislike .....	129
35. Describe a natural talent(sports, music,etc) you want to improve .....	131
36. Describe a piece of local news that people are interested in .....	133
37. Describe a town or city where you would like to live in the future .....	135
38. Describe a law on environmental protection .....	137
39. Describe a (jigsaw, crossword, etc) puzzle you have played .....	139
40. Describe an occasion when you were not allowed to use your mobile phone .....	141
41. Describe a plan in your life (that is not related to work or study) .....	143
42. Describe an argument two of your friends had .....	146
43. Describe a time when you shared something with others (or another person) .....	149
44. Describe a time when you helped a friend .....	151
45. Describe someone who is older than you that you admire .....	154
46. Describe a quiet place you like to spend your time in .....	157
47. Describe a company where you live that employs a lot of people .....	160
48. Describe a movie that you like .....	162

49. Describe an art or craft activity (e.g. painting, woodwork, etc.) that you had (at school).....	164
50. Describe a time you saw something interesting on social media.....	166
51. Describe a time you bought something from a street (or outdoor) market.....	168
52. Describe a time when you tried to do something but was not very successful.....	170
53. Describe a singer you like.....	173
54. Describe a piece of equipment that is important in your home.....	176
55. Describe a creative person whose work you admire.....	178
56. Describe a habit your friend has and you want to develop.....	181
57. Describe an activity that you do after school/work.....	184

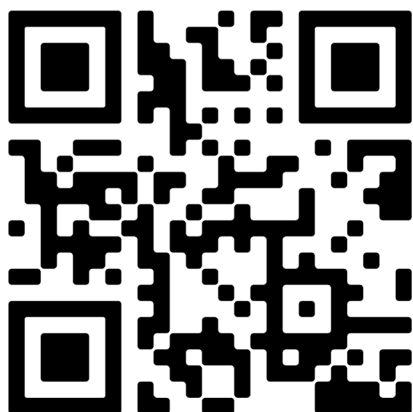
## Lời mở đầu

IELTS Speaking 2021 Review là tài liệu được đội ngũ giảng viên luyện thi IELTS tại Anh Ngữ ZIM biên soạn với mục đích giúp người học có cái nhìn vừa tổng quan vừa chi tiết về độ khó của đề thi IELTS Speaking trong cả năm 2021. Đồng thời, tài liệu cũng cung cấp phương án xử lý các đề thi cụ thể qua việc phân tích đề, lập dàn ý và bài mẫu tham khảo. Nội dung chính của sách bao gồm:

- Tổng hợp đề thi thật IELTS Speaking trong năm 2021
- Câu trả lời tham khảo Band điểm 7+
- Phân tích các từ vựng hay trong bài

IELTS Speaking 2021 Review là sản phẩm trí tuệ của đội ngũ giảng viên tại Anh Ngữ ZIM. Các hành vi sao chép dưới mọi hình thức mà không có sự đồng ý bằng văn bản từ phía Anh Ngữ ZIM đều là những hành vi vi phạm bản quyền và luật sở hữu trí tuệ.

**Scan mã QR dưới đây để truy cập Audio files**





# **IELTS**

## **Speaking Part 1**

# Taking a rest



1.1

## 1. How often do you take a rest?

→ Well, if we're talking about resting after work, then I rest every day. You know, we all need some time to **blow off some steam**<sup>(1)</sup> and **recharge our batteries**<sup>(2)</sup>. No one can work for days without rest.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Blow off some steam:** nghỉ xả hơi

**Blow** /bləʊ/: thổi

**steam** /sti:m/: hơi, hơi nước

Ví dụ: *Call me anytime you need to blow off some steam.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Recharge the batteries:** Nạp lại năng lượng

**Recharge** /,ri:'tʃɑ:dʒ/: Sạc lại, nạp lại

**battery** /'bæt.ər.i/: pin, năng lượng

Ví dụ: *Now I have time to recharge the batteries.*

## 2. What do you usually do when you are resting?

→ Usually, I will grab a book to read, as I love learning new stuff and reading is the best way to do so. Sometimes I watch a movie or play video games, but only the ones that leave me thinking a lot, like a movie that involves time travel or a **puzzle game**<sup>(3)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Puzzle game** /'pʌz.əl geɪm/: trò chơi giải đố

Ví dụ: *You can't keep a good puzzle game down.*

## 3. Do you take a nap when you are taking your rest?

→ Rarely, I would say. Having a nap in the afternoon can make me feel tired after waking up, so I usually don't do that.

## 4. How do you feel after taking a nap?

→ Usually tired, as I said. A nap is usually very short, and I often feel a bit **dizzy**<sup>(4)</sup> after waking up. I usually can't fully concentrate on whatever I have to do afterwards.

<sup>(4)</sup>**dizzy** /'dɪz.i/ (adj): hoa mắt, chóng mặt

Ví dụ: *I felt dizzy with excitement as I went up to collect the award.*

# Reading



1.2

## 1. Do you like reading?

→ I sure do. I read a lot every day as it's one of the best ways to learn new things. Some people call me a **bookworm**<sup>(1)</sup>, because according to them, they've never seen me without a book in my hand.

<sup>(1)</sup> **A bookworm** /'buk.wɜ:m/: một sách

Ví dụ: *She was a bookworm, and an over-achiever in high school.*

## 2. Do you like to read at home or in other places?

→ I prefer reading at home since it's quiet and I can **pay full attention**<sup>(2)</sup> to the book. I live alone, so there's no one there to **interrupt**<sup>(3)</sup> me. Some of my friends like going out to a coffee shop to read, but it's just not my thing. Those places are too noisy, you know.

<sup>(2)</sup> **Pay full attention to something**: tập trung hoàn toàn vào một thứ gì đó

**attention** /ə'ten.ʃən/: chú ý

Ví dụ: *You can't pay full attention to both music and a book at the same time.*

<sup>(3)</sup> **Interrupt** /,ɪn.tə'rʌpt/: can thiệp, làm gián đoạn

Ví dụ: *I wish you'd stop interrupting.*

## 3. In what place do you think it is difficult to read?

→ Any crowded or noisy place like a bus stop, a cinema, or a coffee shop. I can't concentrate when there's too much noise around. I get a bit nervous, or even anxious, in crowded places, so when I want to read, I just choose a place where there's nobody else around.

## 4. Do you like to read by yourself or with other people?

→ By myself, of course. Personally, I see no point in "reading with other people". Reading isn't some kind of group activity, so it's better if we do it alone.

# TV program



1.3

## 1. Do you often watch programs on the TV or on your cell phone?

→ On my mobile phone and sometimes my laptop. My TV has been **unplugged**<sup>(1)</sup> for nearly a year already. It's much more convenient to watch things on a phone since I can do it anywhere and watch whatever I want. Now with the internet, I don't want to be tied up on the sofa at home just to watch some TV shows broadcast on schedule.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Unplugged** /ʌnˈplʌgd/: rút phích cắm

Ví dụ: *I unplugged the TV.*

## 2. What kind of TV programs do you like?

→ I don't **have a preference for**<sup>(2)</sup> any particular type. But if I had to choose, I'd say Indian TV series. I know the stories in those films are completely **illogical**<sup>(3)</sup>, and some action scenes even defy the **laws of physics**<sup>(4)</sup>. But the thing is that they're entertaining, and that's all I expect from a TV show.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Have a preference for something**: Có sự ưu ái cho một thứ gì đó

**preference** /ˈpref.ər.əns/: sự ưa thích

Ví dụ: *Do you have a preference for red or white wine?*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Illogical** /ɪˈlɒdʒ.ɪ.kəl/: phi logic

Ví dụ: *It was an illogical decision, but I was in love.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Laws of physics**: định luật vật lý

**Laws** /lɔːs/: luật

**physics** /ˈfɪz.ɪks/: vật lý

Ví dụ: *Everything existing on Earth follows the laws of physics.*

## 3. Do you like watching the same kind of program all the time?

→ No. It's boring to watch the same thing over and over again. Sometimes I do look for something unusual on Netflix, such as a **mind-bending**<sup>(5)</sup> series like *Dark* or *Alice in Borderland*.

<sup>(5)</sup>**Mind-bending** /maɪnd bending/: xoắn não

Ví dụ: *The world is full of mind-bending substances.*

## 4. Do you talk with your friends about the program you watched?

→ Sometimes. We talk about a bunch of things when we see each other, and TV or internet programs are just some of them. The most recent program that I discussed with my friends was *Dark* – a German TV series. It really with a time-travel theory called Bootstrap Paradox. I won't explain that here since it's too long.

# Getting up early



1.4

## 1. Do you often get up early in the morning?

→ Yes, almost every day. I'm trying to **maintain a healthy lifestyle**<sup>(1)</sup>, so I usually get up at 6 to do some exercise before having breakfast and going to work.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Maintain a healthy lifestyle**: duy trì một lối sống lành mạnh

**Maintain** /meɪn'teɪn/: duy trì

**healthy** /'hel.θi/: lành mạnh

**lifestyle** /'laɪf.staɪl/: lối sống, phong cách sống

*Ví dụ: I eat fruit and vegetables to maintain a healthy lifestyle.*

## 2. What do you usually do when you get up early?

→ Do exercise, as I said. Then if there's still plenty of time left, I'll make my own breakfast and a coffee. Sometimes I get up a bit later, say 6.30 am, and I have to eat out since cooking breakfast can be quite time-consuming. I don't want to be late for work.

## 3. Do you get up early on weekends?

→ Yes. Some people choose to **indulge themselves**<sup>(2)</sup> on Sunday by staying in bed until 9 or even 10 am, but not me. I try to keep the same habits every day, even on weekends, since it's a way to **discipline myself**<sup>(3)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Indulge oneself**: nuông chiều bản thân

**Indulge** /ɪn'dʌldʒ/: nuông chiều

*Ví dụ: I love champagne but I don't often indulge myself.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Discipline myself**: tự kỷ luật bản thân

**Discipline** /'dɪs.ə.plɪn/: kỷ luật

*Ví dụ: I'm trying to discipline myself to eat less chocolate.*

## 4. Which morning do you like best in a week?

→ I'd say Sunday morning because I don't have to go to work on Sunday. After breakfast, I can take some time to clean up the house or do some shopping to buy food for the whole week.

# Singing



1.5

## 1. Do you like singing?

→ Yeah, I love it, although my singing voice is quite terrible. Some people have even told me that they had nightmares after hearing me sing. Anyway, I don't care much about what they say and just simply do what I like.

## 2. When do you sing?

→ Well, I have no particular time for that. I just do it whenever I feel like it, mostly when I take a shower. I also do some karaoke with my neighbours once or twice a week.

## 3. Will you take singing lessons in the future?

→ I'm considering it. I really want to expand my **vocal range**<sup>(1)</sup> and make my **vocal transition**<sup>(2)</sup> smoother. But the thing is I just can't arrange the time. You know, I've **got a lot on my plate**<sup>(3)</sup> at the moment, so that'll have to wait.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Vocal range:** quãng giọng

**vocal** /'vəʊkl/: (thuộc) giọng (nói/hát)

**range** /reɪndʒ/: quãng

*Ví dụ: Mariah Carey is the singer having the largest vocal range.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Vocal transition:** chuyển giọng (giữa các âm vực).

**transition** /træn'zɪʃn/: sự chuyển đổi, chuyển tiếp

*Ví dụ: Only professional singers can do the vocal transition smoothly.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Have got a lot on one's plate:** bận rộn, có rất nhiều việc phải làm.

**plate** /pleɪt/: đĩa (đựng thức ăn)

*Ví dụ: I can't handle this task anymore. I have already got a lot on my plate.*

## 4. Did you enjoy singing when you were younger?

→ Yes, a lot. When I was 6 or 7 years old, I sang almost every day, and that **drove my family crazy**<sup>(1)</sup>. My brother told me to shut up all the time and even threatened to hit me, but I just ignored him.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Drive sb crazy:** khiến ai đó phát điên.

**drive** /draɪv/: lái (xe)

**crazy** /'kreɪzi/: điên

*Ví dụ: He kept driving me crazy by repeating every word I said.*

# Decoration



1.6

## 1. What's the decoration like in your home?

→ Well, I just can't find the right words to describe it because I haven't really decorated it. I just bought a few small plants, a picture, and that's it.

## 2. What kind of decoration do you prefer?

→ I don't really know what "types of decoration" are out there actually, but I'll go for anything that's simple. You could say I'm a **minimalist**<sup>(1)</sup>. I only buy the necessary things for my home.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Minimalist** /'mɪnɪməlɪst/: người theo chủ nghĩa tối giản.

Ví dụ: *I don't really decorate my house much because I'm a minimalist.*

## 3. Do Vietnamese people like decorating their home?

→ Sure. Just like everyone else in the world, Vietnamese people also decorate their home with a whole lot of things: pictures, plants, **toy figures**<sup>(2)</sup>, ... I think it's just normal. You know, everyone wants to make their house look better, right?

<sup>(2)</sup>**Toy figure**: mô hình đồ chơi.

**toy** /tɔɪ/: đồ chơi

**figure** /'fɪɡjər/: hình dáng, nhân vật

Ví dụ: *Some toy figures from famous brands like Gucci are very expensive.*

## 4. What's your favourite colour when decorating your home?

→ Anything that's **bright**<sup>(3)</sup>, maybe something between white and yellow. You know my skin and my mind are dark already, so I prefer something in contrast.

**\*Ghi chú:** từ bright có thể dùng để nói về màu sắc và cả những thứ mang tính trừu tượng hơn.

Ví dụ: *I want a shirt in a bright colour. (Tôi muốn một chiếc áo sáng màu – nói về màu sắc).*

*I believe you're gonna have a very bright future. (Tôi tin anh sẽ có một tương lai rất tươi sáng – nghĩa trừu tượng).*

*On the bright side, this change will increase our company's revenue. (Về mặt tích cực, sự thay đổi này sẽ làm tăng doanh thu của công ty).*

# Maths



1.7

## 1. Do students learn maths in secondary schools in Vietnam?

→ Of course. Actually, they have to learn maths from primary school until the end of high school. It's a compulsory subject, and I also think it's necessary for everyone.

## 2. Do you think maths is difficult?

→ It depends. Some basic maths like making calculations is quite easy. However, things get much more challenging when it comes to something complex like solving a long, big **equation**<sup>(1)</sup> or doing a **trigonometric calculation**<sup>(2)</sup>.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Equation** /i'kweɪʒn/: Phương trình

Ví dụ: *I am clueless about chemical equations.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Trigonometric calculation**: phép tính lượng giác

**Trigonometric** /,trɪɡənə'metɪk/: lượng giác

**Calculation** /,kælkju'leɪʃn/: phép tính

Ví dụ: *I find it so difficult to do trigonometry calculations during Maths lessons.*

## 3. What can people do with maths in their daily life?

→ There's a lot. I think maths exists in every aspect of our life. You know, everyone needs to calculate their own expenses and many other things – that's maths. Some jobs even require more complex and advanced maths. For example, an engineer has to do a bunch of things with **geometry**<sup>(3)</sup> and other stuff; an accountant has to deal with tons of calculations every day. See, maths is important to all of us.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Geometry** /dʒi'ɑ:mətri/: hình học

Ví dụ: *I think I'm better at geometry than arithmetic.*

## 4. Do you learn maths now? Why/why not?

→ Not **formally**<sup>(4)</sup>, but yes. I learn it through my everyday job. I also read some books about maths, but not something that we learn in high school or university. I prefer something that's more applicable.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Formally** /'fɔ:rməli/: một cách chính thống

Ví dụ: *Although she was not formally trained as a history teacher, she is widely respected for her knowledge of the period.*

**Lưu ý:** Từ “formal” khi nói về cách sử dụng ngôn ngữ hoặc cách ăn mặc sẽ mang nghĩa “trang trọng, nghiêm túc”. Tuy nhiên khi sử dụng từ này trong chủ đề giáo dục, nó sẽ mang nghĩa “chính thống – được đào tạo tại một tổ chức giáo dục chính quy”.

Ví dụ: *The majority of children nowadays have access to formal education. (Hầu hết trẻ em hiện nay đều có thể tiếp cận với giáo dục chính quy – giáo dục tại các cơ sở chính thống/ được công nhận).*



# Being Happy



1.8

## 1. Is there anything that makes you feel happy lately?

→ Yes. I just won a lottery 3 days ago, and I'm still **on cloud nine**<sup>(1)</sup>. It's over 1 million dollars, you know, and I still wonder whether I should throw it into real estate or the stock market, or maybe I should take the advice of Elon Musk and get some bitcoin.

<sup>(1)</sup>**On cloud nine (idiom)**: rất vui

*Ví dụ: I was on cloud nine when I received my test result.*

## 2. What do you do to stay happy?

→ Keep a positive attitude. You know, being happy is a state of mind, and we can control our thinking to achieve that. Bad things come and go. What we need to do is just to keep a positive attitude, and happiness will be there with us. Don't **rant and rave**<sup>(2)</sup>. It just makes things worse.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Rant and rave (idiom)**: kêu ca phàn nàn.

**rant** /rænt/: phàn nàn

**rave** /reɪv/: nói lớn (khi tức giận), nói say sưa

*Ví dụ: Instead of sitting there, ranting and raving, you'd better spend time thinking of the solution.*

## 3. Can you stay happy all the time?

→ No, of course. I'm just like every other human on earth. My mood goes up and down **from time to time**<sup>(3)</sup>. I believe no one can stay happy all the time. They have to **feel blue**<sup>(4)</sup> sometimes. That makes us human, you know.

<sup>(3)</sup>**From time to time**: đôi khi, không thường xuyên.

*Ví dụ: She has to work at weekends from time to time.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Feel blue**: cảm thấy buồn rầu.

*Ví dụ: After his cat's death, he always feels blue.*

## 4. Is it important to be happy?

→ Of course. When we're happy with something, we have more motivation to keep on doing other things. Life is **gloomy**<sup>(5)</sup> and dark without happiness.

<sup>(5)</sup>**Gloomy** /'gluːmi/: âm ảm.

*Ví dụ: It was a wet and gloomy day, so I just stayed at home for the whole day.*

# Sport



1.9

## 1. What sports did you do when you were a kid?

→ To be honest, I've never been a **sporty person**<sup>(1)</sup>, not even in my childhood. The only sport I played as a child was football, but I only played when my friends asked me to. If video games **were counted as**<sup>(2)</sup> sports, then yeah, I have another one on my list.

<sup>(1)</sup>**A sporty person:** một người thích thể thao

**Sporty** /'spɔ:rti/: thuộc về thể thao

Ví dụ: *He's a sporty person. He plays many sports like football, volleyball or basketball.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Be counted as something:** được tính như là ...

**Count** /'spɔ:rti/: xem là, xem như

Ví dụ: *We don't usually talk, so I don't think he should be counted as my friend.*

## 2. What's your favourite sport? Why?

→ As I said, sport isn't really my thing, so I don't like any particular sport. If I had to choose, I think it would be video games. You know, now video games **are officially recognised as**<sup>(3)</sup> "e-sports", so I think it's a **valid answer**<sup>(4)</sup> to this question.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Be officially recognised:** được công nhận chính thức

**Officially** /ə'fɪʃəli/: một cách chính thức

**Recognise** /'rekəɡnaɪz/: công nhận

Ví dụ: *The bowling game is not officially recognized as a sport.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**A valid answer:** câu trả lời hợp lệ

**Valid** /'vælɪd/: hợp lệ

**Answer** /'ænsər/: câu trả lời

Ví dụ: *You are required to provide a valid answer. Otherwise, your team will lose this game.*

## 3. Have you ever watched a live sports match before?

→ Never. When I was at uni, the campus was right next to a stadium, but I've never been inside. I also have no desire to watch a live match since I can't stand being in crowded places.

## 4. Are you a fan of any sports teams? Why?

→ I was a fan of a football club called Arsenal based in England, but it was nearly 20 years ago. I liked the club but not because of the club itself. It was because of a player named Thierry Henry. But it was a long time ago. Now I'm not a fan of any team.

# Recycle



1.10

## 1. Do you recycle now? Why?

→ Yes, but it depends on the material of the item. If it's a plastic bottle, I'll just throw it away because most plastics become toxic when used too many times. But if it's **cardboard**<sup>(1)</sup> or metal, the item can be recycled and used for other purposes.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Cardboard** /'kɑːrdbɔːrd/: bìa các tông

Ví dụ: *This model is made of cardboard.*

## 2. Did you recycle when you were a kid?

→ No. I actually had no idea about recycling at that time. I just simply **got rid of**<sup>(2)</sup> any used items. Maybe my parents did tell me something about recycling, but I just couldn't remember.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Get rid of**: loại bỏ một thứ gì đó

Ví dụ: *He is trying to get rid of smoking.*

## 3. Will you recycle in the future?

→ Yes. Recycling is a necessary thing to do. If we just throw everything away after just one use, it would be a huge waste, and sometimes it can be damaging to the environment, too. I **have a lot of concern over**<sup>(4)</sup> environmental problems, you know, so recycling is something I'll surely do.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Have concern over something**: quan tâm/ quan ngại về một điều gì đó.

**Concern** /kən'sɜːrn/: lo lắng, quan ngại

Ví dụ: *Many people are having concern over bullying at schools.*

# Picnic



1.11

## 1. Did you go on a picnic when you were a child?

→ Yes, a few times, mostly with my school. When I was in primary school, the school held a **field trip**<sup>(1)</sup> about once or twice per year, and we usually had a picnic on those occasions.

<sup>(1)</sup>**A field trip:** chuyến đi thực tế

**Field** /fi:ld/: (công việc) quan sát, thực tế

*Ví dụ: Children are very interested in the annual field trips held by their schools.*

## 2. How often do you go on a picnic now?

→ Now I no longer have time for that. You know, I spend about over 10 hours per day at work, even on Saturdays, and a few hours on Sunday. So, I just have almost no time left for things like picnics. I often use the little free time I have for repairing stuff at home or cooking.

## 3. Where do you go on a picnic?

→ If I went on a picnic now, I think I'd choose Central Park in New York. I've always wanted to go to the US and have a picnic in the park there. And besides, Central Park looks really great in pictures, so I'm really **curious**<sup>(2)</sup> about what it actually looks like in reality.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Curious** /'kjuriəs/: tò mò

*Ví dụ: Children are very curious about the wildlife.*

## 4. What is the difference between cooking at a picnic and cooking at home?

→ There are a lot of differences, you know. For example, it's easier when we cook at home because we can keep all the ingredients in the fridge and take them out whenever we need. But when it comes to a picnic, we need to find a way to preserve food because we can't **carry a fridge alongside**<sup>(3)</sup>. Usually food can't be kept for too long, or it'll go off.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Carry something alongside:** mang theo cái gì bên mình

**Carry** /'kæri/: mang theo

**Alongside** /ə,lɔ:ŋ'saɪd/: bên cạnh, dọc theo

*Ví dụ: I always carry a flashlight alongside when I go camping.*

# List



1.12

## 1. Do you make a list when you shop?

→ Yes. I'm a **forgetful**<sup>(1)</sup> person, so it's impossible for me to do the shopping without a list. I did try to go without a list a couple of times, but I ended up forgetting one or two things.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Forgetful** /fər'getfl/: hay quên

*Ví dụ: She has become very forgetful in recent years.*

## 2. Do you make a list for your work?

→ Yes. I make a to-do list every day based on a big plan that I've prepared for the whole year. I think a list like this is very important at work since it allows us to **keep track of**<sup>(2)</sup> the things we need to do.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Keep track of something**: theo sát một thứ gì đó

**Track** /træk/: dấu, vết

*Ví dụ: I can keep track of things pretty well, even without a to-do list.*

## 3. Do you make a list for your work?

→ I think there are 2 types of people who do this. Some people have an excellent memory, so they can keep everything in their mind without writing it down. The second type are those who have no idea what they need to do, so there's no need for them to make a list.

## 4. Do you prefer to make a list on paper or your phone?

→ Personally, I prefer paper. Though it can sometimes be inconvenient because I have to carry a notebook with me all the time, I find it more effective than taking notes on a phone. Using a phone can be distracting sometimes since I may get distracted reading a message or watching something.

# Trees



1.13

## 1. Have you ever planted trees?

→ No, I have never planted a tree in my entire life because I haven't had the chance to plant one. However, if an opportunity arises, I will grow a maple tree in my garden since it's such an **iconic**<sup>(1)</sup> tree of my favorite nation, Canada.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Iconic** /aɪˈkɒːnɪk/: mang tính biểu tượng

Ví dụ: *Dover and the White Cliffs hold iconic status in British history.*

## 2. Do you keep plants at home?

→ Yes, I keep a small cactus, which is a popular **houseplant**<sup>(2)</sup> since it is so low-maintenance, you can just put it on your desk and forget about it. Having some greenery around the house greatly reduces my stress levels and helps me to focus better.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Houseplant** /'haʊsplænt/: cây nhà

Ví dụ: *My mom really love green spaces, so we have many kinds of houseplants in our house.*

## 3. Do you know anything about growing plants?

→ I'm not a farmer or a **gardener**<sup>(3)</sup>, so my knowledge about this is rather limited, but I guess you just need to **water**<sup>(4)</sup> the plant and let it enjoy some sunlight everyday?

<sup>(3)</sup>**Gardener** /'gɑːrdnər/: người làm vườn

Ví dụ: *We employ a gardener two days a week.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Water** /'wɔːtər/: tưới (cây)

Ví dụ: *My hobby is watering the plants in my garden every morning.*

## 4. Do you think places with trees attract more visitors than places with few trees?

→ This is a no-brainer. Places with trees such as parks will have more visitors because of the fresh air and cool shade that they provide, which can help people escape the scorching heat of the city.

# Museums



1.14

## 1. Do you like visiting museums?

→ Certainly, I'm a **history buff**<sup>(1)</sup> so going to museums is one of my favorite **pastimes**<sup>(2)</sup>. Looking at **historical artefacts**<sup>(3)</sup> like guns and blades makes me feel like a kid in a candy store.

<sup>(1)</sup>**History buff**: người mê sử

**Buff** /bʌf/: người yêu thích một chủ đề/lĩnh vực/hoạt động nào đó

*Ví dụ: They were a group of history buffs who used to meet every Thursday evening.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Pastime** /'pæstaim/: thú tiêu khiển

*Ví dụ: Fishing is an enjoyable pastime for people of all ages.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Historical artefacts**: hiện vật lịch sử

**Artefact** /'ɑːrtɪfækt/: hiện vật

*Ví dụ: The museum displays many historical artefacts.*

## 2. Are there any museums in your hometown?

→ No. I don't think so. My hometown has an **uneventful past**<sup>(4)</sup>, so no important historical events took place there, which means there is no museum.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Uneventful past**: quá khứ êm đềm

**Uneventful** /ˌʌnɪ'ventfl/: bình thường, không có gì đặc biệt xảy ra

**Past** /pæst/: quá khứ

*Ví dụ: The couple had an uneventful past, so there's nothing much to talk about their life.*

# New Year celebrations



1.15

## 1. How do you celebrate New Year? Do you have any ceremonies to celebrate the New Year in your country?

→ Most Vietnamese people consider the Lunar New Year, which often occurs after the end of the calendar year, as the true new year. On this day, we usually just stay at home and enjoy a **hearty meal**<sup>(1)</sup> or pray to our **forefathers**<sup>(2)</sup>. I think this is a good way to improve family relationships.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Hearty meal**: bữa ăn thịnh soạn

**Hearty** /'hɑːrti/: lớn, thịnh soạn

*Ví dụ: Wow that's a lot! I have never had such a hearty meal in my life!*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Forefather** /'fɔːrfɑːðər/: tổ tiên

*Ví dụ: Our forefather has fought against the enemy to reclaim victory for our nation.*

## 2. Do you still remember a new year that you celebrated?

→ Definitely. I still remember in 2020 when the **pandemic**<sup>(3)</sup> was really bad, I couldn't go back to my hometown and visit my family because the government restricted travel. Therefore, I had to spend the new year on my own in my apartment, which made me realize the value of **family gatherings**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Pandemic** /pæn'demɪk/: đại dịch

*Ví dụ: People are not allowed to travel abroad during the pandemic.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Family gatherings**: sum họp gia đình

**Gathering** /'gæðərɪŋ/: buổi họp mặt

*Ví dụ: On Tet holiday, I travel back to my hometown to have family gatherings.*

# Work/ Study



1.16

## 1. Do you miss being a student?

→ Sometimes, the only part I recall most often is how **carefree**<sup>(1)</sup> I was when I was a student. Some of my friends wished that they could go back to high school but not me, **not in a million years**<sup>(2)</sup>. I couldn't remember how many times I **went bananas**<sup>(3)</sup> dealing with science subjects.

<sup>(1)</sup>**carefree** /'ker. fri:/ (adj): vô tư

Ví dụ: Robert remembered the old days when he was a carefree child.

<sup>(2)</sup>**not in a million years** /nɒt ɪn ə 'mɪljən jɪrz/ (idiom): không bao giờ

Ví dụ: I don't think that my parents will believe your story, not in a million years.

<sup>(3)</sup>**go bananas** /gəʊ bæ'nɑ:nəs/ (idiom): phát điên

Ví dụ: Suzie went bananas because she couldn't cope with the heavy workload.

## 2. Do you like your job?

→ Honestly, I am constantly under a lot of pressure, but **at the end of the day**<sup>(4)</sup>, realizing how many people I have helped really motivates me to continue. I guess, what I love most about my job is it gives me **a sense of belonging**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**at the end of the day** /æt ði ɛnd ɒv ðə deɪ/ (idiom): sau cùng thì

Ví dụ: At the end of the day, my decision remains the same.

<sup>(5)</sup>**a sense of belonging** /ə sɛns ɒv/ (phrase): cảm giác thuộc về

Ví dụ: Sarah's home always gives her a sense of belonging.

## 3. Why did you choose to do that type of work (or that job)?

→ I wasn't sure of why I became a teacher in the first place, but it grew on me gradually. I enjoy sharing and teaching enables me to do that on a **broadscale**<sup>(6)</sup>. It is also **rewarding**<sup>(7)</sup> knowing my knowledge can help change my students for the better.

<sup>(6)</sup>**broadscale** /'brɒdskel/ (adj): quy mô lớn

Ví dụ: In the meantime, it is a challenge to come up with any broadscale solution to improve global warming.

<sup>(7)</sup>**rewarding** /rɪ'wɔ:ɪ. dɪŋ/ (adj): bổ ích

Ví dụ: Taking part in this cultural festival is actually a rewarding experience for me.

## 4. What technology do you use at work?

→ Most of the classrooms at my school are **ill-equipped**<sup>(8)</sup> so there are not many facilities to support me at work. Well, I do use a computer on a daily basis to prepare lessons and sometimes, to entertain my students.

<sup>(8)</sup>**ill-equipped** /ɪl.ɪ'kwɪpt/ (adj): trang bị kém, không đủ khả năng

Ví dụ: Due to the poor-designed curriculum, many students graduate from school ill-equipped for adult life.

## 5. Do you prefer to study in the mornings or in the afternoons?

→ I am not an **early bird**<sup>(9)</sup> so it's extremely hard for me to concentrate during class in the mornings. I find myself more productive in afternoon lessons while my friends have a hard time concentrating during that time.

<sup>(9)</sup>**early bird** /'ɜ:li.bɜ:d/ (n): người luôn thức dậy sớm

Ví dụ: As an early bird, I always get up early and have my breakfast before 7 am.



### 7. Are you looking forward to working?

→ Definitely. I can't wait to experience a professional working environment where I can **apply my knowledge into practice**<sup>(11)</sup>. In fact, I am applying for an intern position in a **top-notch**<sup>(10)</sup> tech company which only accepts a small number of applicants every year.

<sup>(10)</sup>**top-notch** /ˌtɒpˈnɒtʃ/ (adj): cao cấp, thượng lưu

Ví dụ: *My department has just been equipped with top-notch facilities.*

<sup>(11)</sup>**apply someone's knowledge into practice**: ứng dụng kiến thức của ai đó vào thực tiễn

Ví dụ: *Passive students rarely apply their knowledge into practice.*

### 8. Do you like your major?

→ Of course. My parents weren't very supportive at first because hospitality is a **highly competitive major**<sup>(12)</sup>. But I believe my personality really suits this major and I can experience working in different fields after graduating.

<sup>(12)</sup>**highly competitive major** /haɪli kəmˈpetɪtɪv ˈmeɪdʒə/:

chuyên ngành đầy cạnh tranh

Ví dụ: *Although it is a highly competitive major, I am glad that I've chosen the most suitable major for me.*

### 9. Why did you choose to study that major?

→ My best friend gave me the idea of becoming an Event organizer when we were in 12th grade. She told me that I was gifted at hosting events throughout our high school years and had great **leadership skills**<sup>(13)</sup>, suggesting that I would **bloom**<sup>(14)</sup> if I pursued a career in that major.

<sup>(13)</sup>**leadership skills** /ˈliːdəʃɪp skɪlz/: kỹ năng lãnh đạo

Ví dụ: *It is essential for students to learn collaboration and leadership skills at a young age.*

<sup>(14)</sup>**bloom** /bluːm/ (v): nở rộ

Ví dụ: *My son's music talent bloomed sooner than I'd expected.*

### 10. What subjects are you studying?

→ I am currently undertaking Crisis management and Event organization in my third semester. I have to admit, the lecturers at my school have great expertise and provide many **insights**<sup>(15)</sup> into the hospitality industry.

<sup>(15)</sup>**insight** /ˈɪn.saɪt/ (n): cái nhìn sâu sắc

Ví dụ: *This field trip provided me with plenty insights into the poverty's life.*

### 11. What technology do you use when you study?

→ Mainly my computer, to do assignments and prepare presentations. Most of the assignments at my university have to be done online and I couldn't imagine going to school without my computer.

# Home/Accommodation



1.17

## 1. What do you usually do in your flat?

→ Nothing much, just **ordinary things**<sup>(1)</sup> like cooking and resting after a long day at work. I sometimes **treat myself with**<sup>(2)</sup> a cup of tea while enjoying the sunset because the balcony of my apartment has a clear city view.

<sup>(1)</sup>**ordinary things**: những điều bình thường

Ví dụ: *My life is quite boring since I am stuck with doing ordinary things everyday.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**treat myself with something**: thưởng cho bản thân một cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *In her day-off, she usually treats herself with a short vacation.*

## 2. What room does your family spend most of the time in?

→ The kitchen, for sure. Like most Asian families, our kitchen and dining room are **adjoined**<sup>(3)</sup>, and we spend much of the day there eating and chatting. It is always **cozy**<sup>(4)</sup> and **full of laughter**<sup>(5)</sup> sitting in the kitchen together with my family members.

<sup>(3)</sup>**adjoin** /ə'dʒɔɪn/ (v): liền kề

Ví dụ: *Laos and Thailand adjoin Vietnam.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**cozy** /'kəʊ.zi/ (adj) ấm áp

Ví dụ: *This house gives me a cozy atmosphere.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**full of laughter** /fʊl ɒv 'lɑːftə/: đầy tiếng cười

Ví dụ: *He has the ability to make the class covering full of laughter*

## 3. Can you describe the place where you live?

→ I live on the 22nd floor of a newly built building in District 5. We recently moved in and **refurbished**<sup>(6)</sup> the whole place. The walls are painted in pastel pink, my favorite color, and there is a small garden on the balcony of our apartment.

<sup>(6)</sup>**refurbish** /,rɪ'fɜː.bɪʃ/ (v): tân trang

Ví dụ: *My school's campus was refurbished and expanded last year.*

## 4. What's the difference between where you are living now and where you lived in the past?

→ I used to stay in a **two-storey house**<sup>(7)</sup> in District 12, which took me more than an hour to get to school. Now that I've moved to a more central area, commuting isn't a big problem anymore and many **amenities**<sup>(8)</sup> like shopping malls and cinemas are **within walking distance of**<sup>(9)</sup> my house.

<sup>(7)</sup>**two-storey house** / tuː-'stɔː.ri haʊs/: nhà 2 tầng

Ví dụ: *His family has just moved to a two-storey house.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**amenity** /ə'men.ə.ti/ (n): tiện nghi

Ví dụ: *In developing countries, many areas lack of basic amenities such as electricity.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**within walking distance of** / wɪ'ðɪn 'wɔːkɪŋ 'dɪstəns tuː/: gần đâu đó, có thể đi bộ được

Ví dụ: *I can go to my school within walking distance.*

## 5. Do you plan to live there for a long time?

→ Definitely. The location is ideal and the security here is much better compared to the neighborhood where I used to live. There are enough rooms for everyone in my family and the cost of living here is more **affordable**<sup>(10)</sup>.

<sup>(10)</sup>**affordable** /ə'fɔːr.də.bəl/ (adj): có thể chi trả

Ví dụ: *This branch sells fashionable products at affordable prices.*

## 6. How long have you lived there?

→ Two months. I am still not very familiar with the **surrounding area**<sup>(11)</sup>, but I like exploring new places, so everything has been great so far. But I can't sleep well at night because the dog next door keeps barking!

<sup>(11)</sup>**surrounding area** /sə'raʊndɪŋ 'eəriə/: khu vực xung quanh

Ví dụ: *The crime rate in my surrounding area has increased significantly.*

## 7. What part of your home do you like the most?

→ The balcony, without a doubt. Like I've mentioned, I planted myself a small garden with different kinds of flowers to add more color to my apartment. I didn't know I **was into**<sup>(12)</sup> gardening and now I am planning to grow some vegetables!

<sup>(12)</sup>**(be) into** /'ɪntu:/: thích một cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *She was not really into science subject when she was young.*

## 8. Please describe the room you live in.

→ Well, there are posters of my favorite Korean girl group - BLACKPINK - everywhere on the walls. My bed is placed in the corner to avoid the sun in the morning and my study corner is opposite that. I am thinking of refurbishing, but I haven't saved enough money yet.

## 9. Do you prefer living in a house or a flat?

→ I'd go for a flat. It would save me a lot of time cleaning if I lived in a smaller place. Besides, it usually costs less to rent a flat than an entire house.

## 10. Are the transport facilities near your home very good?

→ I'm not sure. I haven't paid too much attention to that, but I haven't had any difficulty travelling around since living there. However, the roads in front of my building should be expanding soon, so there will be less **traffic**<sup>(13)</sup> **congestion**<sup>(14)</sup>.

<sup>(13)</sup>**traffic** /'træf.ɪk/ (n): giao thông

<sup>(14)</sup>**congestion** /kən'dʒes.tʃən/ (n): đông đúc, tắc nghẽn

Ví dụ: *The government should establish new regulations to reduce traffic congestion in the city.*

## 11. What kind of house or flat do you want to live in in the future?

→ A small apartment for two or three people is good enough for me. But there has to be a large kitchen because that is where my family and I spend most of our time. Other than that, a balcony is a **must-have**<sup>(15)</sup> addition.

<sup>(15)</sup>**must-have** /mʌst-hæv/: phải có

Ví dụ: *I believe a washing machine is a must-have equipment that every household should have.*

# Hometown



1.18

1. Please describe your hometown a little. (How long have you been living there? /Is that a big city or a small place?)

→ I was born and **brought up**<sup>(1)</sup> in Ho Chi Minh city, the **financial hub**<sup>(2)</sup> of Vietnam. Living here for more than 20 years, I'm confident to say that I have the map of this city **in the palm of my hand**<sup>(3)</sup>. It is a bustling city, with people from every corner of Vietnam.

2. What do you like (most) about your hometown? (Do you like living there? /Do you like your hometown?)

→ What I love most about this city is its **cultural diversity**<sup>(4)</sup>. HCMC welcomes people from different parts of the country and even foreigners, allowing me to **come into contact with**<sup>(5)</sup> a wide range of cuisine and culture. It never gets boring living here.

3. Is there anything you dislike about it?

→ Sometimes, I just want to **get away**<sup>(6)</sup> because the **pace of life**<sup>(7)</sup> here is so fast and busy. As this is a city of opportunity, it can be very stressful at times because you can feel **left behind**<sup>(8)</sup> if you're not making any progress. Also, noise and air pollution are everywhere here, so it is **harmful to**<sup>(9)</sup> people's health.

4. Do you think you will continue living there for a long time?

→ I haven't thought of moving anywhere yet, and this place is home to me. I'd probably consider living in a foreign country for a **couple of years**<sup>(10)</sup> to **step out of my comfort zone**<sup>(11)</sup>, but I'd certainly come back and **settle down**<sup>(12)</sup> here.

<sup>(1)</sup>**bring up someone** / brɪŋ ʌp 'sʌmwʌn/ (phr.v): nuôi dưỡng, chăm sóc một ai đó

Ví dụ: I was brought up by my grandparents until I was 5.

<sup>(2)</sup>**financial hub** / faɪ'nænʃəl hʌb/ (n): trung tâm tài chính  
Ví dụ: Hanoi city is not only the capital but also the financial hub of Vietnam.

<sup>(3)</sup>**in the palm of my hand** /ɪn ðə pɑ:m ɒv maɪ hænd/: trong lòng bàn tay của tôi

Ví dụ: The plan was in the palm of his hand.

<sup>(4)</sup>**cultural diversity** / kʌltʃərəl daɪ'vɜ:sɪti/: sự đa dạng văn hoá

Ví dụ: Cultural diversity helps people recognize and respect others religions.

<sup>(5)</sup>**come into contact with** / kʌm 'ɪntu: 'kɒntækt wɪð/: tiếp xúc với

Ví dụ: You should be careful not come into contact with those poison mushrooms.

<sup>(6)</sup>**get away** / get ə'weɪ (phr. v): tránh xa, thoát khỏi

Ví dụ: I will definitely get away from this boring job as soon as possible.

<sup>(7)</sup>**the pace of life** / ðə peɪs ɒv laɪf/: nhịp sống

Ví dụ: John gets overwhelmed by the fast pace of life in this city.

<sup>(8)</sup>**left behind** / left br'haɪnd: bị bỏ lại

Ví dụ: Tourists often left behind trash and plastic bags at tourist destinations.

<sup>(9)</sup>**harmful to** / hæ:mful /: có hại cho

Ví dụ: Drinking too much sweet drinks can be harmful to people's health.

<sup>(10)</sup>**a couple of years** / ə 'kʌpl ɒv jɪəz/: một vài năm

Ví dụ: In the next couple of years, I will probably go to Ho Chi Minh city to start my adult life.

<sup>(11)</sup>**step out of someone's comfort zone** / step aʊt ɒv 'sʌmwʌnz 'kʌmfət zəʊn/: đi ra khỏi vùng an toàn của ai đó

Ví dụ: Many young people choose studying abroad to step out of their comfort zone.

<sup>(12)</sup>**settle down** / setl daʊn / (phr. v): ổn định

Ví dụ: He doesn't think that settling down with anyone at a young age is a good idea.

# The area you live in



1.19

## 1. Do you like the area that you live in?

→ I live quite far from the city center and try to **steer clear of**<sup>(1)</sup> all the **hustle**<sup>(2)</sup> and **bustle**<sup>(3)</sup>. I find this area really calming so I usually spend most of my free time at home. Not to mention, the neighbors here are incredibly **hospitable**<sup>(4)</sup>, yet never **stick their nose in any of my business**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(1)</sup>**steer clear of somebody/something** / stɪə klɪər ɒv 'sʌmbədi/'sʌmθɪŋ/ (phr. v): tránh xa khỏi ai đó/ cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *You should keep your presentation steered clear of political issues.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**hustle** /'hʌs. əl/ (n): nhộn nhịp

<sup>(3)</sup>**bustle** /'bʌs. əl/ (n): hối hả

Ví dụ: *The hustle and bustle of Ho Chi Minh city make me feel overwhelmed.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**hospitable** /hɒs'pɪt. ə. bəl/ (adj): hiếu khách

Ví dụ: *The locals were extremely hospitable to all the tourists.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**stick their nose in something** / stɪk ðeə nəʊz ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ / (idiom): xía mũi vào chuyện gì đó

Ví dụ: *She is such a talkative person, who always sticks her nose in everyone's affairs.*

## 2. What are some changes in the area recently?

→ Not much, even though I asked for the road in front of our houses to be repaired. However, I noticed that there was a new family moving in last week and they brought a dog so I hope it wouldn't cause any **disturbance**<sup>(6)</sup> to the area.

<sup>(6)</sup>**disturbance** /dɪ'stɜː. bəns/ (n): sự quấy rầy

Ví dụ: *She couldn't focus on her test due to the disturbance came from the market.*

## 3. Do you know any famous people in your area?

→ As this place is far from the city center, I doubt that any famous people would choose to live in such a **remote area**<sup>(7)</sup>. I guess it's a good thing, because everyone here wants to **keep a low profile**<sup>(8)</sup> so any attention, even not on them, can be disturbing.

<sup>(7)</sup>**remote area** / rɪ'məʊt 'eəriə / (n): vùng sâu vùng xa

Ví dụ: *Most remote areas in my hometown are difficult to get to.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**keep a low profile** / ki:p ə ləʊ 'prəʊfaɪl/ (idiom): tránh gây sự chú ý

Ví dụ: *As a celebrity, he always tries to keep a low profile whenever he goes out.*

## 4. Where do you like to go in that area?

→ There is a small river behind my house, so I go there once or twice a week in the afternoon to **go for a stroll**<sup>(9)</sup> and watch the sunset. I wish I could do it more often, but I'm always **caught up at work**<sup>(10)</sup> and come home late at night.

<sup>(9)</sup>**go for a stroll** / ɡəʊ fɔːr ə strəʊl/: đi dạo

Ví dụ: *The elderly in my country loves to go for a stroll, especially in the morning.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**caught up at work** / kɔːt ʌp æt wɜːk/: có rất nhiều việc để làm

Ví dụ: *I've been caught up at work for more than 3 days.*

# Name



1.20

## 1. Is it easy for you to remember people's names?

→ To be honest, I'm quite terrible at it. I am always having such a hard time trying to remember people's names; however, I do **recall**<sup>(1)</sup> people's faces very well.

<sup>(1)</sup>**recall** /'ri:.kæl/ (v): nhớ lại

Ví dụ: *The police asked her to recall the incident last night.*

## 2. How do you remember people's names?

→ I have never really thought about that, but I guess what I always do is attach their name to words that have similar sounds so I can relate more easily. **Instinctively**<sup>(2)</sup> I also **say their names out loud**<sup>(3)</sup> to create an impression.

<sup>(2)</sup>**instinctively** /ɪn'stɪŋk.tɪv.li/ (adv): theo bản năng

Ví dụ: *Alex instinctively recognized that Alice was lying to him.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**say out loud** / seɪ aʊt laʊd/: nói một điều gì đó thành tiếng

Ví dụ: *My mother told me that if I have any opinion, I should say it out loud.*

## 3. How do you feel when people can't remember your name?

→ I've never been in such a situation, but I would probably be fine with it, probably because I'm not so good at names myself. I do know many of my friends who would **make a fuss over**<sup>(4)</sup> it, as they believe it is disrespectful to forget people's names.

<sup>(4)</sup>**make a fuss over** / meɪk ə ˈfʌs 'əʊvə / (idiom): dành sự chú ý, chăm sóc cho ai đó hoặc cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *My teacher never makes a fuss over our grammatical mistakes.*

## 4. Do you often forget people's names?

→ Yes, most of the time. I talk to dozens of people **on a daily basis**<sup>(5)</sup> as a part of my job, so I think it is **justifiable**<sup>(6)</sup> if such information **slips my mind**<sup>(7)</sup> easily. It can be quite embarrassing sometimes, if I **bump into someone**<sup>(8)</sup> who I had met several times before without remembering their name.

<sup>(5)</sup>**on a daily basis** / ɒn ə 'deɪli 'beɪsɪs/: hàng ngày

Ví dụ: *Almost every Vietnamese people drink coffee on a daily basis.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**justifiable** /'dʒʌs.tə.fai.ə.bəl/ (adj): chính đáng

Ví dụ: *Unless you have a justifiable reason for your absence, you will be minus half of your midterm score.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**slip my mind** / slɪp maɪ maɪnd/: quên một điều gì đó

Ví dụ: *I forgot to submit my assignment to the professor, it completely slipped my mind.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**bump into someone** / bʌmp 'ɪntu: 'sʌmwʌn/: va vào ai đó

Ví dụ: *I happened to bump into my ex-boyfriend in the middle of the street.*

# Window view



1.21

## 1. What scenery can you see from the window of your home/dormitory?

→ I'm living in a house in a small alley so the only thing I get to see clearly every day is probably my neighbors' garden. It is quite pleasing looking at it since he plants a variety of flowers such as roses, **orchids**<sup>(1)</sup>, and sunflowers. Occasionally, if I get up early enough, I can watch the sun rise from the window of my bedroom on the third floor.

<sup>(1)</sup>**orchid** /'ɔːr.kɪd/ (n): cây hoa lan

Ví dụ: *On our parents' first date, my dad gave my mom a bouquet of orchid.*

## 2. Do you like to watch the scenery from your window?

→ To be honest, there isn't much of a **captivating**<sup>(2)</sup> window view where I live so I have no interest in doing so. However, when traveling, I always go for a room with beach or mountain views because it gives me a **sense of connection to nature**<sup>(3)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**captivating** /'kæp.tə.veɪ.tɪŋ/ (adj): hấp dẫn

Ví dụ: *This is the most captivating movie I've ever seen.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**a sense of connection to nature** / ə sɛns ɒv kə'nekʃən

tu: 'neɪtʃə/: cảm giác hòa mình với thiên nhiên

Ví dụ: *Participating in this field trip gives me a sense of connection to nature.*

## 3. Do you want to live in a house with beautiful window views?

→ I would say yes. Coming home after a hard day at work and admiring the beautiful views sounds ideal to me. Unfortunately, what I get right now at my current place is just **dull**<sup>(4)</sup> walls in a **concrete jungle**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**dull** /dʌl/ (adj): nặng nề, nhàm chán

Ví dụ: *All of the articles in this newspaper are quite dull.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**concrete jungle** /ˌkɑːn.kri:t 'dʒʌŋ.gəl/ (n): những toà nhà ở thành phố

Ví dụ: *The park has been transformed into a concrete jungle for the past few months.*

## 4. How do you feel when you can't see any beautiful view from your window?

→ We do not always get to choose the view from our home, so I don't **take such a matter seriously**<sup>(6)</sup>. Regardless, it would be awesome having a place with **brehtaking**<sup>(7)</sup> views that can **soothe our mind**<sup>(8)</sup>, at times it can be quite depressing surrounded by four walls

<sup>(6)</sup>**take something/someone seriously** / teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ/ 'sʌmwʌn 'sɪərɪəsli/: coi trọng một việc gì đó/ một ai đó

Ví dụ: *The police should take public transport pickpocketing seriously.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**brehtaking** /'breθ.teɪ.kɪŋ/ (adj): trán lệ, ngoạn mục

Ví dụ: *Ha Long Bay's breathtaking landscapes has attracted many foreign tourists.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**soothe someone's mind** / suːð 'sʌmwʌnz maɪnd/: thư giãn đầu óc

Ví dụ: *Listening to lo-fi music can help you soothing your mind.*

# Farming



1.22

## 1. Have you visited a farm?

→ Well, I was born and raised in a **metropolitan**<sup>(1)</sup> area, so I have never **set foot in**<sup>(2)</sup> a farm. But I wouldn't miss the chance to visit one in the future, probably when I travel to the southern part of Vietnam.

<sup>(1)</sup>**metropolitan** /ˌmet.rəˈpiː.lə.tən/ (adj): liên quan đến đô thị

Ví dụ: *He thinks it a big challenge to seek for job's opportunities in metropolitan areas.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**set foot in** /set fʊt ɪn/: đặt chân đến đâu đó

Ví dụ: *I had never set foot in a ghost house before because I was so scared!*

## 2. What kind of farm do you like?

→ Since I've never visited one, I'm quite **clueless**<sup>(3)</sup> about what type of farm I'd like. I guess there are **ethical**<sup>(4)</sup> farms where animals are treated **humanely**<sup>(5)</sup> and given proper **nutrients**<sup>(6)</sup> or **organic**<sup>(7)</sup> farms where there are no **pesticides**<sup>(8)</sup> or **genetically modified foods**<sup>(9)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**clueless** /ˈkluː.ləs/ (adj): không biết gì

Ví dụ: *Most Vietnamese are completely clueless about the long-term consequences of COVID-19.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**ethical** /ˈeθ.i.kəl/ (adj): có đạo đức

Ví dụ: *Animal testing can be considered as an unethical experimental method.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**humanely** /hjuːˈmeɪ.n.li/ (adv): nhân đạo

Ví dụ: *The authorities should treat their prisoners more humanely by removing the death penalty.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**nutrient** /ˈnuː.tri.ənt/ (n): chất dinh dưỡng

Ví dụ: *Fish can provide humans with a remarkable amount of nutrients and vitamins.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**organic** /ɔːrˈɡæ.n.ɪk/ (n): hữu cơ

Ví dụ: *Organic farm model has been implemented widely in many developed countries.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**pesticide** /ˈpes.tə.said/ (n): thuốc trừ sâu

Ví dụ: *Using pesticides on plants can damage people's health.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**genetically modified food** /dʒiˈnetɪk(ə)li ˈmɒdɪfaɪd fuːd/: thực phẩm biến đổi gen

Ví dụ: *Genetically modified food has to be banned completely.*

## 3. Do you think farming is important?

→ Certainly, especially to developing countries like Vietnam or Thailand. Farming is an **integral**<sup>(10)</sup> part of the food industry since it provides a significant amount of produce like eggs, milk, and grains. Not to mention, farming also creates many jobs for those living in the countryside.

<sup>(10)</sup>**integral** /ˈɪn.tə.ɡrəl/ (adj): quan trọng

Ví dụ: *The visual illustrations are an integral part of this project.*



#### 4. Did you do farm work when you were young?

→ Like I mentioned, I never had the chance to try but I did try growing vegetables in the **backyard**<sup>(11)</sup> of my grandfather's house 2 years ago. It was summertime so I spent 2 months gardening with him in my hometown.

<sup>(11)</sup>**backyard** /ˌbækˈjɑːrd/ (n): sân sau

*Ví dụ: My neighbour's house has the biggest backyard in the area.*

# New Year



1.23

## 1. How do you celebrate New Year?

→ Well, when New Year is coming, I usually clean, organize my bedroom, and throw away old things. On New Year's Eve, my family gathers together, drinks **champagne**<sup>(1)</sup> and watches the **firework**<sup>(2)</sup> display on the rooftop of my house.

<sup>(1)</sup>**champagne** /ʃæm'peɪn/ (n): rượu Champagne

Ví dụ: *She always celebrates her birthday with a bottle of champagne.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**firework** /'faɪr.wɜ:k/ (n): pháo hoa

Ví dụ: *There is going to be a firework display tonight in the city hall.*

## 2. Do you still remember the new year that you celebrated?

→ If my memory serves me right, last year I bought a cherry blossom and a kumquat tree as a present for my parents. Moreover, last year was a special New Year because of the Covid -19 pandemic, my family couldn't go anywhere, we just **paid a short visit to**<sup>(3)</sup> **close relatives**<sup>(4)</sup> to wish them the best luck and health.

<sup>(3)</sup>**pay a visit to**: đến thăm một nơi nào đó

Ví dụ: *Despite being busy this month, he still tries to pay a short visit to his grandparents' home.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**close relatives** / kləʊs 'relatɪvz/ (n): họ hàng thân thiết

Ví dụ: *Because of the heavy workload, I cannot visit my close relatives regularly.*

## 3. Do you have any ceremonies to celebrate the New Year in your country?

→ Well in Vietnam, people are always **looking forward to**<sup>(5)</sup> the fireworks display on New Year's Eve. This is a once-a-year occasion, and therefore many youngsters **flock**<sup>(6)</sup> to hot spots like Sword Lake or Thong Nhat Park to watch the wonderful performance.

<sup>(5)</sup>**look forward to something**: mong chờ một điều gì đó

Ví dụ: *His lessons are very engaging, which makes me looking forward to it every week.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**flock** /flɒ:k/ (v): tụ họp, tụ tập

Ví dụ: *Thousands of people flocked to the semi-final football match.*

## 4. Why do people think New Year is a new beginning?

→ I guess because it is considered as **a time to turn over a new leaf**<sup>(7)</sup>. People create a New Year's resolution to remind themselves of continuing good **practice**<sup>(8)</sup>, changing undesired behavior and accomplishing personal goals.

<sup>(7)</sup>**a time to turn a new leaf(idiom)**: sự khởi đầu mới

Ví dụ: *My 18th birthday was the time my life turned over a new leaf.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**practice** /'præktɪs/ (n): phong tục tập quán

Ví dụ: *People should preserve their country's traditional practice and customs.*

# Home country



1.24

## 1. Which part of your country do you want to live in?

→ Actually, I prefer living in the north, particularly in Hanoi. It is a big city which provides plenty of employment opportunities, amenities, and **recreational**<sup>(1)</sup> places to the locals.

<sup>(1)</sup>**recreational** /ˌrek.rɪˈeɪ.ʃən.əl/ (adj): liên quan đến hoạt động vui chơi giải trí

Ví dụ: You can find a lot of recreational places in the city center.

## 2. What makes you feel proud of your country?

→ That's an interesting question. I take great pride in our sense of **solidarity**<sup>(2)</sup> and **patriotism**<sup>(3)</sup> in Vietnam. Moreover, I am proud of Vietnamese cuisine. Although it does not have any complexity in terms of cooking preparation, traditional dishes are always an amazing combination between fresh ingredients and **intense**<sup>(4)</sup> flavors.

<sup>(2)</sup>**solidarity** /ˌsɒ.lɪˈder.ə.ti/ (n): sự đoàn kết

Ví dụ: Without solidarity among members, this company can never achieve significant success.

<sup>(3)</sup>**patriotism** /ˈpeɪ.tri.ə.tɪ.zəm/ (n): lòng yêu nước

Ví dụ: The feeling of patriotism brings Vietnamese people closer.

<sup>(4)</sup>**intense** /ɪnˈtens/ (adj): đậm đà

Ví dụ: I falled in love with sushi because of its intense flavor.

## 3. Do you know the history of your country well?

→ I have to admit that I am a **history enthusiast**<sup>(5)</sup>. I am keen on researching and reading about historical events, because researching our history enriches my knowledge a lot and I learn a lot of interesting facts!

<sup>(5)</sup>**history enthusiast** /ˈhɪstəri ɪnˈθjuːziæst/: người thích tìm hiểu về lịch sử

Ví dụ: As a history enthusiast, I think school should change the way they teach history.

## 4. Will you stay in Vietnam in the future?

→ Frankly speaking, my plan is to go on with my teaching job at my high school and therefore moving out of Vietnam is not my intention. Moreover, I don't want to live far away from my family which is always the best **mental support**<sup>(6)</sup> whenever I have troubles.

<sup>(6)</sup>**mental support** /ˈmentl səˈpɔːt/: hỗ trợ về mặt tinh thần

Ví dụ: I got over depression thanks to the mental support from my family and friends.

# Special costumes



1.25

## 1. Do you like to wear special costumes?

→ To be honest, I prefer wearing normal outfits to special costumes. I just wear special costumes like Ao Dai on certain occasions such as a **graduation ceremony**<sup>(1)</sup> or a wedding of my relatives.

<sup>(1)</sup>**graduation ceremony** /ˌgrædʒu'eɪʃən 'serɪməni/: lễ tốt nghiệp

*Ví dụ: To some people, graduation ceremony is a one-in-a lifetime occasion.*

## 2. Did you try any special costumes when you were young?

→ Yes, I did. When I was a child, I was a big fan of Disney, hence I **was keen on**<sup>(2)</sup> wearing special costumes like a “princess dress” in Disney movies. You know, children love this kind of stuff as it's like cartoon characters “coming to life”. However, when I became a teenager, special costumes were never of any interest anymore.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Tobe keen on** / tə'bi: ki:n ɒn/ (phr. v): thích một cái gì đó

*Ví dụ: To be honest, I am not really keen on science subjects.*

## 3. When was your last time to wear special costumes?

→ Let me recall, it was a long time ago when I celebrated my 7th birthday. I put on a **yellowish**<sup>(3)</sup> dress which was similar to the costume worn by the main character in “Beauty and the Beast”. I imagined myself being a princess when wearing that outfit. Remembering those good old days makes me miss my childhood.

<sup>(3)</sup>**yellowish** /'jeləʊɪʃ/ (adj): có sắc vàng

*Ví dụ: Although my mother is a fan of yellowish clothes, I just cannot stand it.*

## 4. Have you ever bought special costumes?

→ My very first special costume was bought by my mother a long time ago. And frankly, since then I have never bought a costume because I don't wear them and find them to be a **nonessential**<sup>(4)</sup> item. Therefore, it would be a waste of money to purchase an outfit that I **seldom**<sup>(5)</sup> wear

<sup>(4)</sup>**nonessential** /ˌnɒ: n rɪ'senʃl/ (adj): không cần thiết

*Ví dụ: Buying nonessential items whenever I feel sad is one of my bad habits.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**seldom** /'seldəm/ (adv): hiếm khi

*Ví dụ: She seldom uses her TV since the day she bought her new laptop.*

# Relax



1.26

## 1. What would you do to relax?

→ To me, indulging myself in my hobbies is the best way to **let my hair down**<sup>(1)</sup>. Whenever I have free time, I will **immerse myself in**<sup>(2)</sup> a good book or **binge watch**<sup>(3)</sup> a whole series on Netflix.

<sup>(1)</sup>**let someone's hair down** / let 'sɑmwʌnz heə daʊn/ (idiom): cho phép bản thân thư giãn, vui vẻ

Ví dụ: *I will definitely let my hair down after the final test.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**immerse yourself in something** /ɪ'mɜːs jɔː'self ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ/ (phrase): chìm đắm vào làm một việc gì đó  
Ví dụ: *Sometimes, immersing ourselves into the nature is a good way for us to relax.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**binge watch** /'bɪndʒ wɒtʃ/ (v): xem phim  
Ví dụ: *The best method to relieve stress after a hard-working day is a night of binge watching on Netflix.*

## 2. Do you think doing sports is a good way to relax?

→ Yeah, I think so. Doing sport can **burn calories**<sup>(4)</sup> and is a good way **to take my mind off of things**<sup>(5)</sup>. When focusing on exercise, I can temporarily escape from the pressure and **tension**<sup>(6)</sup> of daily life. Being active is an effective form of relaxation.

<sup>(4)</sup>**burn calories** / bɜːn 'kælərɪz/: đốt cháy năng lượng  
Ví dụ: *Do you know that doing houseworks can burn a huge amount of calories?*

<sup>(5)</sup>**to take somebody mind off something**: làm ai đó ngưng nghĩ về điều đó  
Ví dụ: *You've already broken up with him so please take your mind off him.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**tension** /'tenʃn/ (n): căng thẳng  
Ví dụ: *The tension in my classroom just dissolves when the teacher walks out.*

## 3. Do you think vacation is a good time for you to relax?

→ Absolutely yes! Life without vacation must be awful. That's why companies provide employees paid leave of absence so they can have some days off and **chill out**. Holidays are the best time to recharge your energy and **refresh your mind**<sup>(7)</sup>.

<sup>(6)</sup>**chill out** /tʃɪl aʊt/ (phr. v): thư giãn  
Ví dụ: *Please chill out, the airplane is going to arrive in an hour anyway.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**refresh someone's mind**: thư giãn tinh thần  
Ví dụ: *A short trip can probably refresh your mind.*

## 4. Do you think students need more relaxing time?

→ Without a doubt! You know, most schools today require students to do a lot of homework, which puts a lot of pressure on them. Therefore, providing them with more relaxation time is an effective way to let students blow off some steam before **cramming**<sup>(8)</sup> for important exams.

<sup>(8)</sup>**cram** /kræm/ (v): nhồi nhét  
Ví dụ: *Unless you cram all of the knowledge in one week, you will fail your test.*

# Barbecue



1.27

## 1. Do Vietnamese people like barbecue?

→ I think it depends. In fact, barbecue is not a **conventional dish**<sup>(1)</sup> in Vietnam, so in general Vietnamese youngsters prefer outdoor barbecue parties more so than the elderly. Besides, our barbecue techniques are also different from those used in western countries. We usually use **marinated pork ribs**<sup>(2)</sup> mixed with some kinds of vegetables grilled over charcoal.

<sup>(1)</sup>**conventional dish** /kən'venʃənəl dɪʃ/: món ăn thông thường

Ví dụ: *Rice, noodles, and breads are some popular conventional dishes in Vietnam.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**marinated pork ribs** /'mɛrə,neɪtɪd pɔrk rɪbz/: sườn heo ướp

Ví dụ: *This restaurant sells the best marinated pork ribs in town.*

## 2. What kind of food do you like to eat for barbecue?

→ Actually, I am not a **picky eater**<sup>(3)</sup>; hence I can eat anything. However, if I had to choose the thing I like the most, I would go for grilled pork ribs. At a barbecue, pork ribs are **seasoned**<sup>(4)</sup> perfectly with fish sauce and chopped garlic. Looking at grilled ribs always **makes my mouth water**<sup>(5)</sup>!

<sup>(3)</sup>**picky eater** /'pɪki 'i:tə / (n): người kén ăn

Ví dụ: *My parents are picky eaters, so I always feel uncomfortable when eating out with them.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**season** /'si:zən/ (v): nêm nếm

Ví dụ: *A professional chef should master the seasoning technique.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**make someone's mouth water (idiom)**: làm ai đó cảm thấy thèm thường

Ví dụ: *My mother makes my mouth water by her signature dish.*

## 3. Would you like to have a barbecue with your family or your friends?

→ I definitely want to have a barbecue party with my friends. It is a great way to strengthen friendships and escape from the hustle and bustle of daily life. I take a lot of pleasure in preparing, cooking, and enjoying food with my **besties**<sup>(6)</sup>.

<sup>(6)</sup>**bestie** (n): bạn thân

Ví dụ: *I will always go for my bestie when I want to share any difficulty.*

## 4. Did you have barbecue when you were a child?

→ Sadly, I never experienced a barbecue when I was little because my parents had no idea how to cook western-type dishes. Moreover, at that time, let's say 15 years ago, barbecue did not **catch on**<sup>(7)</sup> in Vietnam like today. Outdoor BBQs were **once in a blue moon**<sup>(8)</sup>!

<sup>(7)</sup>**catch on** / kætʃ ɒn/ (phr. v): bắt kịp xu hướng

Ví dụ: *Organic food has caught on as consumers have become more health conscious.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**once in a blue moon (idiom)**: hiếm khi

Ví dụ: *Due to our conflict, my sister and I only talk once in a blue moon.*

# Flowers



1.28

## 1. What kinds of flowers do you know?

→ Well, my sister in law is a **florist**<sup>(1)</sup> so I am familiar with some popular flowers such as daisies, roses, and sunflowers to name a few. My favorite is actually forget-me-not flowers. As the name implies, these small and delicate flowers symbolize true love memories. They're a sweet gesture and reminder of never-ending love.

## 2. Are there any flowers that have special meaning in Vietnam?

→ I am not sure about this, in our country, giving white flowers in general may be considered **taboo**<sup>(2)</sup>, simply because they are **synonymous**<sup>(3)</sup> with death. So for example, it's fine to give your girlfriend a bouquet of red roses but if there is one white rose that man may be **beaten up**<sup>(4)</sup>.

## 3. Have you ever planted any flowers?

→ I did in the past but not anymore. I am an avid, but **novice**<sup>(6)</sup> gardener, and I have planted some **herb seedlings**<sup>(7)</sup> at home, but when I tried my hand at growing flowers, the seeds never germinate or even if they sometimes did, they soon died after a few days. That's why now I just go straight to a nearby nursery and get my favorite flowers and take care of them later at home.

## 3. Have you sent flowers to anyone?

→ I've actually got into the habit of sending out flowers to my friends and my family members. I think flowers make a great gift choice as not only their vivid colors can liven up a whole space and **boost the recipient's mood**<sup>(8)</sup>, but they can also **speak volumes**<sup>(9)</sup> since each species of flora has its own meaning. That is to say, if we want to express our feelings to someone or apologize to them but we are too shy or ashamed to do that, a certain type of flower would perfectly **fit the bill**<sup>(10)</sup>.

<sup>(1)</sup>**florist** /'flɒr.ɪst/ (n): người bán hoa

Ví dụ: I want to become a florist because I love different kinds of flowers.

<sup>(2)</sup>**taboo** /tə'buː/ (n): điều cấm kỵ

Ví dụ: Giving out white flowers is probably a taboo in my culture.

<sup>(3)</sup>**synonymous with** /sɪ'nɒn.ɪ.məs/: tương tự với

Ví dụ: Using more eco-friendly products is also synonymous with protecting our environment.

<sup>(4)</sup>**beat up** /bi:t/(phr.v): gây thương tích

Ví dụ: The robber was arrested after being beaten up by local people.

<sup>(5)</sup>**liven up the whole space**: làm sống động một không gian

**liven up** /'lɪv-ən 'ʌp/, **whole** /hoʊl/, **space** /speɪs/

Ví dụ: Adding some flowers to this room can live up the whole space.

<sup>(6)</sup>**novice** /'nɒ.vɪs/ (a): mới bắt đầu

Ví dụ: He claimed to be a novice guitar player, but the way he played that song said otherwise.

<sup>(7)</sup>**herb seedlings** /hɜːb/ /'siːd.lɪŋ/: giống cây thảo mộc

Ví dụ: It's easier to plant a herb seedling than to sow seeds and wait for them to grow.

<sup>(8)</sup>**boost sb's mood** /buːst/ /muːd/: làm cho tâm trạng của ai đó trở nên vui vẻ

Ví dụ: Listening to music can boost your mood

<sup>(9)</sup>**speak volumes** /'vɔːl.juːmz/: có ý nghĩa

Ví dụ: She didn't say anything but her face spoke volumes

<sup>(10)</sup>**fit the bill (idiom)**: có đủ tiêu chuẩn

**fit** /fɪt/, **bill** /bɪl/

Ví dụ: She need a phone with the best battery life, so I think a Samsung or Xiaomi would fit the bill better than an Iphone.

# Advertisement



1.29

## 1. What kinds of advertisements do you watch?

→ As a **technophile**<sup>(1)</sup>, I never skip those tech-related commercials that promote **cutting-edge gadgets**<sup>(2)</sup>. Though I don't have the means to buy everything, I still want to be well-informed. As a girl, I used to have some interest in cosmetics ads also but it's weird because the more I watch those models in the ads, the more self-conscious I become, so now I often switch channels when those appear.

<sup>(1)</sup>**technophile** /'teknəfaɪl/(n): người đam mê công nghệ

Ví dụ: *As a technophile, my brother spends lots of money buying cutting-edge gadgets.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**cutting-edge gadgets** /ˌkʌt.ɪŋ 'edʒ/ /'gædʒ.ət/: thiết bị tiên tiến

Ví dụ: *Those cutting-edge gadgets surely make our lives more convenient, but they also cost a lot of money.*

## 2. Where can you see advertisements?

→ Today, we are bombarded with ads everywhere even at home when watching tv, scrolling facebook or on the streets when driving past those **digital billboards**<sup>(3)</sup>. However, while those ads are supposed to promote products and gain trust from customers, their overwhelming presence has probably caused people to be even more distrustful and finicky when shopping.

<sup>(3)</sup>**backfire** /ˌbæk'faɪr/(v): phản tác dụng

Ví dụ: *Her plan to make him jealous backfired on her when he started dating her best friend.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**digital billboard** /'dɪdʒ.ə.təl /'bɪl.bɔːrd/(n): bảng quảng cáo điện tử

Ví dụ: *Today, we can catch sight of many digital billboards on the street.*

## 3. Have you ever bought something because of its advertisement?

→ I have bought a few things, but I mostly regretted it because none of it measured up to my expectations. Thanks to such experiences though, I have become less gullible, and more advertising **savvy**<sup>(5)</sup>, so now I know that products that are **hyped up**<sup>(6)</sup> too much usually don't **live up to our expectations**<sup>(7)</sup>, and we should not purchase them.

<sup>(5)</sup>**savvy** /'sæv.i/ (a): có hiểu biết về điều nào đó

Ví dụ: *Those investors are financially savvy, so you could learn about business from them.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**hype up** /haɪp/ (phr.v): cường điệu hoá, thổi phồng

Ví dụ: *It's undeniable that products that are hyped up too much usually don't live up to our expectations.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**live up to one's expectations** /lɪv /'ek.spek'teɪ.fənz / đúng như kỳ vọng của ai

Ví dụ: *Children today are under pressure to live up to their parents' expectations.*

## 4. Do you watch advertisements from the beginning to the end?

→ It depends, if it were a TV commercial, then I simply grin and bear it, I have no other choice. However, if they appear on social media platforms, I can always skip them after 3 to 5 seconds. Sometimes, I am not patient enough to wait for the skipping button to appear, so I just reload the video.



# Wild animals



1.30

## 1. Do you like to watch TV programs about wild animals?

→ Honestly, no. I am not a huge fan of wildlife shows or documentaries because wild animals **chill me to the bone**<sup>(1)</sup>. When I was 12, I watched one documentary about how predators catch their prey and it sent chills up my spine when I saw a snake slithering towards a frog.

<sup>(1)</sup>**chill somebody to the bone (idiom)**: khiến ai sợ hãi  
**chill** /tʃɪl/, **bone** /boʊn/

*Ví dụ: My daughter enjoys scary movies although they chill her to the bone.*

## 2. Did you learn something about wild animals at school?

→ Of course yes. All students in my country get to learn about and explore animals in biology. I remember taking trips to a national park where we enjoyed watching crocodiles, feeding monkeys and taking pictures of some rare reptiles such as chameleons. It was such an **eye-opening experience**<sup>(2)</sup> for me.

<sup>(2)</sup>**an eye-opening experience** /'aɪ,əʊp.nɪŋ/ /ɪk'spɪr.i.əns/:  
trải nghiệm mở mang tầm mắt

*Ví dụ: It's such an eye-opening experience that I can see wild animals in the zoo.*

## 3. Where can you see wild animals?

→ Unlike in Australia where citizens sometimes **catch sight of**<sup>(3)</sup> a kangaroo hopping in the street, in Vietnam, the only place to get close to wild animals is at the zoo. Having said that, if you have a chance to **set foot in some mountainous areas such as Dak Lak**<sup>(4)</sup>, you'll be surprised to see people riding elephants in the street.

<sup>(3)</sup>**catch sight of something** /kætʃ/ /saɪt/: bắt gặp

*Ví dụ: It's impossible to catch sight of wild animals on the street.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**set foot in somewhere** /set/ /fʊt/: đặt chân đến đâu

*Ví dụ: If you have a chance to set foot in Africa, you'll be amazed by many wild animals there.*

## 4. In which country do you think you can see many wild animals?

→ African countries I'd have to say. These nations **are endowed with**<sup>(5)</sup> a variety of unique wild species. Sadly, the population of some endangered species there is shrinking due to poaching. Unless the governments take some action to address such issues, some creatures may become extinct.

<sup>(5)</sup>**be endowed with something** /ɪn'dəʊd/: được phú cho cái gì

*Ví dụ: African countries are endowed with a wide range of wild animals.*

# Environment



1.31

## 1. Would you like to work in a company related to environmental protection?

→ I would if I could. I am an **eco-conscious**<sup>(1)</sup> person and I am fully aware of my responsibility to reduce my own **carbon footprint**<sup>(2)</sup>, which is pretty hard to achieve. That's why the least I can do is to join an organization that goes green and makes meaningful contributions to the environment.

<sup>(1)</sup>**eco-conscious** /i:.kəʊ-/ /'kɑ:n.fəs/(a): có ý thức bảo vệ môi trường

Ví dụ: *Luckily, the new president is an eco-conscious person so he has launched many environmental campaigns.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**carbon footprint** /,kɑ:r.bən 'fʊt.prɪnt/(n): Dấu chân carbon nói về lượng khí thải gây hiệu ứng nhà kính do một người tạo ra

Ví dụ: *Every individuals should start to reduce their carbon footprint to protect the environment.*

## 2. How can we protect the environment?

→ There are plenty of things we can do to preserve the natural world. First and foremost, we must strictly abide by environmental laws. We can practice the 3 Rs, save electricity, and switch to public transport for commuting. Moreover, planting some trees at home could also make a huge difference to our current air quality.

## 3. Do you think you've done enough to protect the environment?

→ I don't think I have done enough to save our environment. I mean, sometimes I can't refrain from travelling by my own private vehicle or buying **single-use products**<sup>(3)</sup> out of convenience. I know that discipline would **go a long way**<sup>(4)</sup> towards protecting the environment, but sadly I am not a well-disciplined kind of person.

<sup>(3)</sup>**single-use** /,sɪŋ.gəl'ju:s/(a): sản phẩm dùng một lần  
Ví dụ: *Single-use products are one of the main factors behind environmental pollution.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**go a long way towards doing something (idiom)**: có ích trong việc gì  
Ví dụ: *This sponsorship money will go a long way towards supporting poor children to go to school.*

## 4. Is there education about environmental protection at school?

→ Well, I don't think our education system has done a very good job in educating young generations about going green. Those lessons at school simply introduce students to environment-related topics rather than teach them practical knowledge such as how to segregate domestic waste or things you can and cannot recycle. I hope that they would just revamp the curriculum in the future so that children can get a **good grasp of ways to preserve the environment**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(5)</sup>**have a good grasp of something** /græsp/: hiểu rõ, nắm vững điều gì

Ví dụ: *No matter how much I try, I couldn't have a good grasp of this subject.*

# Car trip



1.32

## 1. Do you like to travel by car?

→ Definitely not. I get **motion sickness**<sup>(1)</sup> every time I am in a car so a car trip is my **pet aversion**<sup>(2)</sup>. From time to time, when I have to travel a long distance, I still have to go by car, there is no other choice so I just **grin and bear it**<sup>(3)</sup>. I often take vitamins to **steady my nerves**<sup>(4)</sup> and nibble on saltine crackers to ease the nausea.

<sup>(1)</sup>**motion sickness** /'mou.ʃən/ /'sɪk.nəs/: chóng say tàu, say xe

Ví dụ: *I get motion sickness so I could only travel by plane.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**pet aversion** /pet/ /ə'vɜː.ʒən/: ai, điều gì cực kì đáng ghét

Ví dụ: *Durian is my pet aversion because I can't stand its smell*

<sup>(3)</sup>**grin and bear it** /grɪn/ /beər/(idiom): chấp nhận điều gì và không than vãn

Ví dụ: *Her parents forbade her to go to the party and she had no choice but to grin and bear it.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**steady one's nerves** /'sted.i/ /nɜːrvz/: khiến ai bình tĩnh lại

Ví dụ: *When I feel anxious, I listen to music to steady my nerves.*

## 2. When do you travel by car?

→ I only opt for a car when I go back to my hometown or when I need to **carpool**<sup>(5)</sup> to go to work. The latter situation tends to happen when my motorcycle breaks down, which is often, and I don't have the means to use ridesharing services on my own. Since the commuting distance is not too far, I can still handle my car sickness.

<sup>(5)</sup>**carpool** /'kɑːpuːl/ (v): đi xe chung với ai

Ví dụ: *It's more economical to carpool when working in a big city.*

## 3. Where is the farthest place you have traveled to by car?

→ I am not much of a traveller and I've never been out of my own country. But sometimes I do **get itchy feet**<sup>(6)</sup> and decide to travel to some touristy place usually located not too far from the city. I guess, Nha Trang is the farthest place I have driven to on a day trip with my family.

<sup>(6)</sup>**get itchy feet** /'ɪtʃ.i/ /fi:t/(idiom): cảm thấy muốn đi du lịch, hoặc làm gì đó khác

Ví dụ: *She tends to travel somewhere far away from the city whenever she gets itchy feet.*

## 4. Do you like to sit in the front or back when traveling by car?

→ I always **have dibs on**<sup>(7)</sup> the front seat as it's where I experience the least motion sickness and I can crack the window for some fresh air without disturbing others. Plus, I love to keep the driver company so that he won't feel drowsy, especially if it's a long drive.

<sup>(7)</sup>**have dibs on something** /dɪbz/: dành quyền sử dụng cái gì trước người khác

Ví dụ: *I've had dibs on the first baked cupcake but she stole mine.*

# Primary School



1.33

## 1. What did you like to do the most when you were in primary school?

→ I **have a memory like a sieve**<sup>(1)</sup> so my memories about that period are a bit blurry. But I do remember **having a real blast**<sup>(2)</sup> playing hopscotch with my friends. I remember that IT classes interested me the most because I could play with computers.

<sup>(1)</sup>**have a memory like a sieve (idiom)**: dễ dàng trí, hay quên

**memory** /'mem.ər.i/, **sieve** /siv/

*Ví dụ: My grandmother has a memory like a sieve so she has a notebook to write down important things.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**have a blast (doing something)** /blæst/: có khoảng thời gian vui vẻ khi làm gì

*Ví dụ: The kids had a blast playing in the park yesterday.*

## 2. How did you go to your primary school?

→ More often than not, I just went to school on foot since the school was just **a stone's throw**<sup>(3)</sup> from my house. My dad actually walked me to school for the first couple of years, since at that time I was too young and he was afraid that I may get lost or get abducted.

<sup>(3)</sup>**a stone's throw** /stəʊn/ /θrou/(from): rất gần

*Ví dụ: The school is just a stone's throw so you could walk there.*

## 3. How do you like your primary school?

→ Of all the schools I went to, my primary school was where I had the most pleasant memories. It's where I was still a carefree child who **didn't give a hoot about**<sup>(4)</sup> academic achievements or my parents' acknowledgement. Plus, it's also where I met my best friend who always **stood up for me**.<sup>(5)</sup>

<sup>(4)</sup>**not give a hoot about something** /hu:t/: không quan tâm về việc gì

*Ví dụ: No matter what her mother said, she didn't give a hoot and just did what she liked.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**stand up for somebody**: đứng lên bảo vệ ai

*Ví dụ: A best friend is someone who always stands up for you.*

## 4. What did you do in your leisure time in your primary school?

→ As I was quite a hyperactive child, I usually ran from class to class, looking for friends to play with. Sometimes, I **lost myself in**<sup>(6)</sup> those traditional games, such as tug of war, so I went back to class late and **was told off**<sup>(7)</sup> by the teacher. Yet, I was not always a good student because sometimes I felt like acting up to attract attention from people and get into a fight.

<sup>(6)</sup>**lose oneself in something**: đắm mê với việc gì

*Ví dụ: Sometimes, he loses himself in work and forgets meals. This does a lot of harm to his health.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**tell somebody off**: la mắng ai

*Ví dụ: The kid was told off over and over again, but he still kept acting out.*

# Wallet



1.34

## 1. Do you use a wallet?

→ Of course, I often use a **breast wallet**<sup>(1)</sup> which is just **right up my alley**<sup>(2)</sup> because my banknotes aren't folded. Also, I have a bi-fold wallet which **comes in handy**<sup>(3)</sup> when I rush to a convenience store or a nearby drug store or to pick up an ordered package from a shipper

<sup>(1)</sup>**breast wallet** /brest/ /'waɪ.lɪt/(n): ví dài

Ví dụ: *I love to use a breast wallet because my banknotes won't be folded.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**be right up one's alley** /street /'æ.l.i/ - /stri:t/(idiom): đúng với sở thích của ai

Ví dụ: *Lobster was just right up his alley. He is big on seafood.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**come in handy** /'hæn.di/: trở nên tiện lợi

Ví dụ: *A phone may come in handy when there is a blackout.*

## 2. Have you ever lost your wallet?

→ A couple of times. I am pretty absent minded so there's been lots of times when my wallet got lost on a train, a bus or in a cab. I've also been pickpocketed, which wasn't very nice, but that wasn't really my fault.

## 3. Have you ever sent a wallet to someone as a gift?

→ Yes, I have, and it was a designer travel wallet for my dad. Although the price was a bit high, it was totally worth it because my dad goes on business a lot and he can use this wallet to keep all his travel documents safe and secure in one place. He seemed to be **thrilled to bits**<sup>(4)</sup> with this gift when I handed it to him.

<sup>(4)</sup>**be thrilled to bits** /θrɪld/- /bɪt/: cực kì hài lòng

Ví dụ: *Her parents were thrilled to bits when she informed them of her wedding.*

## 4. Do most of your friends use wallets?

→ I believe so. I think wallets, whether it is a phone case wallet or a tri-fold wallet, are must-have items. Although we are now moving to a cashless society where there is little need to keep **banknotes**<sup>(5)</sup> on us, we still need a wallet to hold our credit cards and other personal documents such as passports or driving licenses.

<sup>(5)</sup>**banknote** /'bæŋk.nəʊt/ (n) tiền giấy

Ví dụ: *Today, most people prefer digital payment to using banknotes.*

# Festival



1.35

## 1. How do you celebrate festivals in your country?

→ It depends. For religious festivals, people often **flock to sacred places**<sup>(1)</sup> such as a pagoda or a church. If it were a cultural festival such as the mid-autumn festival, people would gather around the municipal square to enjoy some music performances or take pictures.

<sup>(1)</sup>**flock to somewhere** /flɑ:k/: đổ xô tới đâu

Ví dụ: *Hundreds of people flocked to the square to see famous singers.*

## 2. What special food and activities do you have for these festivals?

→ Each festival has its own typical cuisine and activities that distinguish it from others. For example, at the mid-autumn festival, it's easy to **catch sight of**<sup>(3)</sup> some street stalls selling mooncakes. Plus, the traditional dragon and unicorn dances also give a festive vibe on this occasion.

<sup>(2)</sup>**tell something/somebody apart**: phân biệt được cái gì, ai

Ví dụ: *They are a twin so it's hard to tell them apart.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**catch sight of something** /kætf/ sight /saɪ/: bắt gặp cảnh tượng gì

Ví dụ: *It's easy to catch sight of children carrying a colorful lantern on mid-autumn festival.*

## 3. How do you celebrate the Spring Festival?

→ The same way that all Vietnamese people do. Actually, spring festival is our Lunar New Year, and it's the time when people get together and **catch up with**<sup>(4)</sup> each other after a hectic year. It's customary that families visit their relatives on the first day of the year, and then go to a pagoda to pray for a new prosperous year. On these days, the streets become are bustling and everyone gets **dressed**<sup>(5)</sup> to the nines whenever they go out, which all makes up the festive vibe of Tet.

<sup>(4)</sup>**catch up with someone** /kætf/ : hỏi thăm về cuộc sống của ai

Ví dụ: *I spent a whole afternoon catching up with my cousin who i haven't seen for years.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**dressed (up) to the nines** /naɪnz/(idiom): ăn mặc đẹp

**dressed** /drest/

Ví dụ: *It's her birthday so he got all dressed up to the nines.*

## 4. What is your favourite festival?

→ Unlike most of my friends who are huge fans of Tet, I love the mid-autumn festival because I feel nostalgic everytime I see a kid carrying a lantern and running around with his friends. This festival somehow takes me back to my carefree childhood when I could express myself without being too self-conscious.

# Holidays



1.36

## 1. Where did you go for your last holiday?

→ Last Tet holiday, my whole family spent a whole week visiting all places of interest in the south of Vietnam. As it was the **peak season**<sup>(1)</sup>, every attraction was **jam packed**<sup>(2)</sup> with people, and it was tiring to queue up in a long line waiting for your turn to get in. But **looking on the bright side**<sup>(3)</sup>, it gave me the chance to strengthen family bonds after a whole year **burying myself in work**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(1)</sup>**peak season** /pi:k/ /'si:.zən/: mùa cao điểm

Ví dụ: People should avoid peak season when travelling because everything will be much more expensive than usual.

<sup>(2)</sup>**jam-packed** /ˌdʒæm'pækt/ (a): chật kín, đông đúc

Ví dụ: During the peak season, places of interests are jam-packed with tourists

<sup>(3)</sup>**look on the bright side** /braɪt/ /saɪd/: nhìn nhận mặt tích cực của sự việc

Ví dụ: Life is full of ups and downs, so we should learn to look on the bright side and keep moving.

<sup>(4)</sup>**bury oneself in something** /'beri:/: chôn vùi bản thân vào việc gì

Ví dụ: It would do harm to your health if you kept burying yourself in work like that.

## 2. Do you like holidays? Why?

→ I always look forward to a holiday because it's when I can take a break from the **daily grind**<sup>(5)</sup> and **indulge myself**<sup>(6)</sup> a bit to recharge my batteries. Plus, on holiday, my whole family would get together and spend quality time with one another, cementing our family ties. To me, family is my top priority.

<sup>(5)</sup>**daily grind** /'deɪ.li/ /graɪnd/: vòng quay công việc

Ví dụ: I take a few days off to get away from my daily grind and recharge my batteries.

<sup>(6)</sup>**indulge oneself** /ɪn'dʌldʒ/: nuông chiều bản thân

Ví dụ: From time to time, I indulge myself by lavishing money on shopping.

## 3. Which public holiday do you like best?

→ As I was saying, family **means the world to me**<sup>(7)</sup> so I love it most because it's when people go back to their hometown and have a lot of family gatherings. Plus, I **get a real kick out**<sup>(8)</sup> of giving my parents and grandparents a helping hand to spruce up our house to welcome the new year.

<sup>(7)</sup>**mean the world to somebody**: cực kì quan trọng với ai

**mean** /mi:n/, **world** /wɜ:ld/

Ví dụ: Her family means the world to her, so no matter how busy she is, she always spend quality time in the evening with them.

<sup>(8)</sup>**get a kick out of someone/something**: có được niềm vui từ ai/cái gì đó

Ví dụ: Even as an adult, I still get a kick out of building sandcastles at the beach.

## 4. What do you do on holidays?

→ Holidays are a chance to unwind after days of sweating over work. That's why I often take advantage of such precious time to get away from the hustle and bustle of city life, travel somewhere off the beaten track or even splurge on a few days at a sumptuous resort.

# Headphones



1.37

## 1. Do you use headphones?

→ Very often. I am a true **audiophile**<sup>(1)</sup> and I remember spending a load of money on a set of high-tech headphones as a **treat**<sup>(2)</sup> for myself for my last birthday. I even bought another pair of earphones to use when I'm not at home.

<sup>(1)</sup>**audiophile** (n) /'ɔː.di.əʊ.faɪl/ : người yêu âm thanh/âm nhạc

Ví dụ: *The sound quality when listening to music is very important to an audiophile.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**treat** (n) /tri:t/: đối xử

Ví dụ: *The way, how you treat your children, is unacceptable.*

## 2. What type of headphones do you use?

→ An over-ear set that gives me a high-quality music listening experience. They're not **wireless**<sup>(3)</sup> though and they're quite big so I only use them at home where I can sit comfortably.

<sup>(3)</sup>**wireless** (a): không dây

Ví dụ: *Thanks to bluetooth technology, a lot of gadgets are now wireless.*

## 3. When would you use headphones?

→ Everytime I work or study. When I need to focus, I'll play music and put my headphones on, which not only helps me to concentrate but also blocks out any unwanted noise.

## 4. In what conditions you won't be using headphones?

→ Definitely when driving. It's highly dangerous to use them while driving as it can seriously affect your driving skills and even prevent you from hearing **warning**<sup>(4)</sup> sounds. I also hate using headphones when doing exercise, as it puts more weight on my head, which is super uncomfortable!

<sup>(4)</sup>**warning** /'wɔːr.nɪŋ/ (n): cảnh báo

Ví dụ: *Before being fired, you will receive a warning email from the manager.*



# Weather



1.38

## 1. What kind of weather do you like most?

→ Cloudy days are definitely my favourite. I can't **stand**<sup>(1)</sup> the heat from the sun and rainy days are just too wet and humid. Unfortunately, it is such a **bummer**<sup>(2)</sup> that there aren't many cloudy days in Ho Chi Minh city.

<sup>(1)</sup>**stand (v)** /stænd/ : chịu đựng

Ví dụ: *Many people can't stand eating spicy food.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**bummer (n)** /'bʌm.ər/ : điều gây phiền hà

Ví dụ: *It is a bummer that I forgot my car key in the car.*

## 2. What is the weather like in your hometown?

→ There are only 2 kinds of weather where I was born, sunny and rainy. The weather is really extreme here : it's either **scorching hot**<sup>(3)</sup> or **pouring**<sup>(4)</sup> rain. But I was born and raised here so I've learnt to **adapt**<sup>(5)</sup> to such sudden temperature changes.

<sup>(3)</sup>**scorching hot** /'skɔːr.tʃɪŋ ha:t/ (adj): rất nóng

Ví dụ: *At this time last year, the beach was scorching hot so there weren't many visitors.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**pour** /pɔːr/ (v): đổ, trút nước

Ví dụ: *Because it started pouring rain, we were late for school.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**adapt** /ə'dæpt/ (v): thích nghi

Ví dụ: *Although this is a well-paid job, it took me a while to adapt to the working environment.*

## 3. Is there any difference in the weather in different parts of Vietnam?

→ Yes for sure. The north gets to experience 4 seasons, which creates different kinds of weather all year round. Meanwhile, where I live, in the South, we only have dry and wet weather, with hot and sunny days most of the time.

## 4. Do you prefer dry or wet weather?

→ Even though rainy days can **get on my nerves**<sup>(6)</sup> sometimes because of the mud it causes, I still prefer wet weather over dry weather any time. There's nothing worse than the heat during the dry season in my hometown.

<sup>(6)</sup>**get on my nerves** (idiom): làm phiền tôi/làm tôi khó chịu

Ví dụ: *I don't want to be rude but your child's crying is really getting on my nerves.*

# Colours



1.39

## 1. What is your favorite colour?

→ Blue, without a doubt. I think mostly because the color blue is really **pleasing**<sup>(1)</sup> to look at and it's easy to **mix and match**<sup>(2)</sup> with other colors. In fact, more than half of my clothes are blue.

<sup>(1)</sup>**pleasing** /'pli:ziŋ/ (adj): hài lòng

Ví dụ: *It was pleasing to see my student's score has increased a lot.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**mix and match (phrase)**: phối đồ

Ví dụ: *Despite trying to mix and match different colors, she realized that she looks best in black and white.*

## 2. What is the colour that you dislike?

→ Definitely red. Sometimes it's too **intense**<sup>(3)</sup> for someone who loves **simplicity**<sup>(4)</sup> like me. But unlike me, a lot of my friends love wearing red because they say the color makes them feel more **bold**<sup>(5)</sup> and confident.

<sup>(3)</sup>**intense** /ɪn'tens/ (adj): mãnh liệt, dữ dội

Ví dụ: *I cannot stand Thai cuisine as all of the dishes have an intense spicy flavor.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**simplicity** /sɪm'plɪ.sə.ti/ (n): sự đơn giản

Ví dụ: *This smartphone has been bought by a lot of middle-aged customers because of its simplicity.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**bold (adj)** /bəʊld/: can đảm, quả quyết

Ví dụ: *Since he was in kindergarden, he was a bold and confident boy.*

## 3. What colours do you want to paint your house with?

→ Just plain white. I like to keep things simple and the color white suits my taste. Plus, it is a **neutral**<sup>(6)</sup> color so I believe it doesn't affect my mood so much, which is something I try to avoid when choosing wall colors.

<sup>(6)</sup>**neutral** /'nu:trəl/ (adj): trung tính

Ví dụ: *During my roommate's argument, I didn't want to get involved so I remained neutral.*

## 4. What colour makes you feel uncomfortable in your room?

→ Like I've mentioned, anything in red looks off to me, so I would never buy anything in that color to decorate my room. My room is painted in white and all the decorations are in pastel colors so they are very **pleasing to the eye**<sup>(7)</sup>.

<sup>(7)</sup>**pleasing to the eye** /aɪ-'pli:ziŋ/: đẹp mắt

Ví dụ: *Her watercolor paintings are very pleasing to the eye.*

# Pets and animals



1.40

## 1. What is your favorite animal?

→ I am a big fan of penguins, simply because they look so adorable. I particularly love those 'Emperor penguins', such a catchy and **relatable**<sup>(1)</sup> name. And the more I get to know about their **customs**<sup>(2)</sup> and behaviors, the more I fall in love with them.

<sup>(1)</sup>**relatable** /rɪˈleɪ.tə.bəl/ (adj): dễ liên tưởng

Ví dụ: Taylor Swift's love songs are *relatable* to my actual love life.

<sup>(2)</sup>**custom** /rɪˈleɪ.tə.bəl/ (n): phong tục

Ví dụ: In Vietnam, receiving lucky money on the Lunar New Year is a traditional *custom*.

## 2. Have you ever kept an animal as a pet?

→ I used to insist that my mom get me one but I had to give up eventually because she is **allergic**<sup>(3)</sup> to all kinds of animal **fur**<sup>(4)</sup>. I think having a pet can teach us many things, like how to be responsible for others.

<sup>(3)</sup>**allergic** /əˈlɜː.dʒɪk/ (adj): bị dị ứng

Ví dụ: A lot of Americans are *allergic* to peanuts.

<sup>(4)</sup>**fur** /fɜː/ (n): lông động vật

Ví dụ: This region has placed a ban on killing animals for *fur*.

## 3. Where do you prefer to keep your pet, indoors or outdoors?

→ I've never owned a pet but I guess keeping them indoors would be safer. I wouldn't want my pet to be **kidnapped**<sup>(5)</sup> in the middle of the night. Not to mention, pets do run away sometimes so locking them in the house would make me less worried.

<sup>(5)</sup>**kidnap (v)** /ˈkɪd.næp/: bắt cóc

Ví dụ: My sister's pet was *kidnapped* right in front of her house.

# Public garden and parks



1.41

## 1. Would you like to play in a public garden or park?

→ I think parks are more spacious than public gardens so it is more ideal to play there. Besides, I have never visited a public garden before, so I have no **clue**<sup>(1)</sup> what they're like or what kinds of activities are allowed there.

<sup>(1)</sup>**clue** /klu:/ (n): gợi ý

Ví dụ: *The detective is looking for clues in his search for the missing girl.*

## 2. What do you like to do when visiting a park?

→ Just **going for a stroll**<sup>(2)</sup> and enjoying some fresh air. I am not a sporty person so I don't really play sports much, but a lot of people from my neighborhood play badminton and **shuttlecock**<sup>(3)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**go for a stroll** /strəʊl/ : đi dạo

Ví dụ: *My grandparents have a habit of going for a stroll after eating.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**shuttlecock** /'ʃʌt.əl.kɑ:k/ (n): cầu lông

Ví dụ: *The kids in my neighborhood play shuttlecock every Sunday afternoon.*

## 3. How have parks changed today compared to the time you were a kid?

→ I can't tell you about other parks in the city because I've never visited any of them. But for the park in my neighborhood, it's been expanded and there are more seating areas and **vending machines**<sup>(4)</sup>, which had been requested for years! I used to spend time watching birds there but strangely there aren't many of them now.

<sup>(4)</sup>**vending machine** /'ven.dɪŋ ,mə'ʃi:n/ (n): máy bán hàng tự động

Ví dụ: *You can find numerous vending machines across the road in this area.*

## 4. Would you prefer to visit a private garden or public garden?

→ Probably a public garden if I needed to escape the **hustle and bustle**<sup>(5)</sup> of the city. But in most cases, I wouldn't want to visit either of the two because there is nothing I am interested in doing there and I am not at all a **nature lover**<sup>(6)</sup>.

<sup>(5)</sup>**hustle and bustle** /'hʌsl ænd 'bʌsl/: nhộn nhịp và hối hả

Ví dụ: *The old people tend to stay away from the hustle and bustle of city life.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**nature lover** (n): người yêu thiên nhiên

Ví dụ: *Alice is a nature lover and also a skillful gardener.*

# Science



1.42

## 1. Do you like science?

→ I was into chemistry big time in high school and I spent a lot of time at the lab back then. I love watching the **chemical reactions**<sup>(1)</sup> after mixing new combinations of **substances**<sup>(2)</sup>. All my friends said I was foolish to miss out on other activities, but honestly there was nothing else I wanted to do.

<sup>(1)</sup>**chemical reaction** /ˌkem.ɪ.kəl riˈæk.fən/ (n): phản ứng hoá học

Ví dụ: *These complicated chemical reactions can only be done by scientists.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**substance** /ˈsʌb.stəns/(n): chất hoá học

Ví dụ: *You have to be careful when using resin, it is an extremely toxic substance.*

## 2. When did you start to learn about science?

→ From elementary school I guess. But it wasn't until high school that I got to spend time at the school lab and got some **hands-on**<sup>(3)</sup> experience. I have to admit that science can be applied to so many aspects of our life.

<sup>(3)</sup>**hands-on** /ˌhændˈzɑːn/ (adj): thực tế

Ví dụ: *It is important for fresh graduates to have some prior hands-on experience.*

## 3. Which science subject do you find interesting?

→ Like I have mentioned, chemistry. Some people find it extremely difficult and it does require a lot of memorizing of formulas and so forth, but when you start to see the real **applications**<sup>(4)</sup> of chemistry, it becomes very exciting.

<sup>(4)</sup>**application** /ˌæp.ləˈkeɪ.fən/ (n): ứng dụng

Ví dụ: *The major application of my research is to reduce the rate of cancer in young people.*

## 4. Have you done anything interesting with science?

→ I once built an **artificial**<sup>(5)</sup> volcano for a spring fair with my classmate, which won us second prize. I know a volcano model isn't something surprisingly new, but it took us more than 2 months to finish it and the final result was **amazeballs**<sup>(6)</sup>!

<sup>(5)</sup>**artificial** /ˌɑːr.tɪfɪ.əl/ (adj): nhân tạo

Ví dụ: *I prefer to buy artificial flowers because they last a lot longer than fresh flowers.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**amazeballs** /əˈmeɪz.bɑːlz/ (adj): tuyệt vời, đáng kinh ngạc

Ví dụ: *Despite its strange look, the taste of the dish was amazeballs.*

# Handwriting



1.43

## 1. Do you like to write by hand?

→ It's a **pain**<sup>(1)</sup>, to be honest. I think that handwriting doesn't matter anymore. In this **computer age**<sup>(2)</sup>, it is more convenient to type than to write. I can't think of any situation where I would need to **jot something down**<sup>(3)</sup>, everything can just be done **electronically**<sup>(4)</sup> these days.

<sup>(1)</sup>**A pain (idiom)**: Một vật/người gây ra cảm giác khó chịu

Ví dụ: *That child is a real pain in the neck.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Computer age** /kəm'pjʊ:tə' eɪdʒ/: Thời đại máy tính

Ví dụ: *The computer age has revolutionised the task of finding available parts.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Jot something down** /dʒɑ:t/: Viết gì đó bằng tay

Ví dụ: *I carry a notebook so that I can jot down any ideas.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Electronically** /i,lek'trɔ:nɪ.kəl.i/: được làm bằng thiết bị điện tử/máy tính

Ví dụ: *80 percent of tolls are paid electronically.*

## 2. Is your handwriting easy to read?

→ Most of the time, it's not. I have a habit of writing very quickly, so I couldn't say that I have **neat**<sup>(5)</sup> handwriting. But if I need to write something serious, like **compose**<sup>(6)</sup> a letter to my boss, I try to make my writing as **legible**<sup>(7)</sup> as possible.

<sup>(5)</sup>**Neat** /ni:t/: gọn gàng

Ví dụ: *Everything was neat and tidy and gleamingly clean.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**Compose** /kəm'pəʊz/: biên soạn một cách kỹ lưỡng

Ví dụ: *He started at once to compose a reply to Anna.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**Legible** /'ledʒɪb(ə)l/: dễ đọc

Ví dụ: *His writing wasn't legible, so he failed the exam.*

## 3. Which do you prefer, writing by hand or typing?

→ Typing, definitely. With the help of technology, you can send a message **at the push of a button**<sup>(8)</sup>, which means that the message is sent out instantly. But if you write something with a pen or pencil, it may take days or even weeks to have your letter delivered.

<sup>(8)</sup>**At the push of a button (idiom)**: rất dễ dàng

Ví dụ: *You can't expect to get everything you need at the push of a button.*

## 4. What is the difference between handwriting and typing?

→ They're totally different. Emails are sent nearly instantly; you can also **attach**<sup>(9)</sup> colorful images or videos to them. On the other hand, I think handwriting is a way for people to **express**<sup>(10)</sup> themselves better as I think that a person's handwriting **represents**<sup>(11)</sup> their personality.

<sup>(9)</sup>**attach** /ə'tætʃ/: đính kèm

Ví dụ: *I attached a photo to my application form.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**express** /ɪks'pres/: thể hiện

Ví dụ: *He expresses himself easily in English*

<sup>(11)</sup>**represent** /reprɪzent/: đại diện, tượng trưng

Ví dụ: *We believe you represent everything British racing needs.*

# Mobile apps



1.44

## 1. What mobile apps have you recently used?

→ Well, I've bought a new phone recently and I've been using a lot of different apps on it. I mostly use apps such as Facebook or Youtube. They can be very **entertaining**<sup>(1)</sup> and I've spent a lot of time **browsing**<sup>(2)</sup> those apps.

<sup>(1)</sup>**entertaining** /entə'teɪnɪŋ/: mang tính giải trí

Ví dụ: *We spent an entertaining evening at the theater.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**browse** /braʊz/: đọc lướt (báo, sách, ứng dụng điện thoại, ...)

Ví dụ: *Try browsing around in the network bulletin boards.*

## 2. What kinds of mobile apps are you usually interested in?

→ I think that mobile phones should be a tool for people to unwind, so I prefer using apps that can help me relieve stress. Fortunately, there are a lot of really good apps that can be used for this purpose. They do have some drawbacks though. Sometimes, I **lose track of time**<sup>(3)</sup> and **stare**<sup>(4)</sup> at the screen for so long, which tends to strain my eyes a lot.

<sup>(3)</sup>**lose track of time**: quên mất thời gian

Ví dụ: *You should remind Sally to be punctual, she always loses track of time.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**stare** /steəː/: nhìn chăm chăm

Ví dụ: *Ben continued to stare out the window.*

## 3. What was the first mobile app you used?

→ **As far as I can remember**<sup>(5)</sup>, it was Facebook. It was **all the rage**<sup>(6)</sup> when I was in high school and it was also the reason why I bought my first smartphone, you know, to connect with my friends and family.

<sup>(5)</sup>**As far as I remember**: Tôi nhớ rằng

Ví dụ: *He was the only one who enjoyed the play, as far as I can remember.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**All the rage (idiom)**: rất nổi tiếng và thịnh hành

Ví dụ: *Internet shopping is now all the rage.*

## 4. What kinds of mobile apps would you like to use in the future?

→ I'm waiting for more creative apps that could keep me entertained. Having said that, I also think that I have to control my **screen time**<sup>(7)</sup>. Mobile phones are **a source of distraction**<sup>(8)</sup> for me, making me lose focus on my work. So I think that I have to use my phone more wisely.

<sup>(7)</sup>**screen time**: thời gian sử dụng điện thoại

Ví dụ: *Limit screen time (TV, computers, and video games) to less than 2 hours each day.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**a source of distraction**: một nguồn gây xao lãng  
**source** /sɔːs/: nguồn

**distraction** /dɪstrækʃən/: sự xao lãng

Ví dụ: *Facebook and Instagram have become a huge source of distraction for many people.*

# Getting lost



1.45

## 1. Have you ever got lost?

→ Yes, it has happened before. Although I'm proud of having excellent **navigation**<sup>(1)</sup> skills, I got lost once when I visited Singapore. The buildings there are completely different from Vietnam, it's like a **maze**<sup>(2)</sup>, and I couldn't **find my way**<sup>(3)</sup> when I first went there.

<sup>(1)</sup>**navigation** /navi'geɪʃ(ə)n/: dẫn đường

Ví dụ: Modern day aircraft have onboard navigation equipment so pilots can't get lost.

<sup>(2)</sup>**maze** /meɪz/: mê cung

Ví dụ: We got lost in the maze.

<sup>(3)</sup>**find your way (idiom)**: tìm được đường đi

Ví dụ: I hope you can find your way home.

## 2. How can you find your way when you are lost?

→ Normally, I would rely on my **sense of direction**<sup>(4)</sup>. Most of the time, I can **navigate**<sup>(5)</sup> my way quite easily. However, I sometimes use google maps on my phone to find the quickest route.

<sup>(4)</sup>**sense of direction**: ý thức về phương hướng

Ví dụ: Sense of direction is the ability to know one's location and perform wayfinding.

<sup>(5)</sup>**navigate (v)**: định hướng

Ví dụ: There's nothing worse than navigating through heavy traffic.

## 3. Can you read a map when you get lost?

→ Yes, I can. When I was in the army, I was **instructed**<sup>(6)</sup> in how to use a map. I think it is an essential skill to **master**<sup>(7)</sup>, which could help you to avoid a lot of trouble.

<sup>(6)</sup>**instruct** /ɪn'strʌkt/: hướng dẫn

Ví dụ: The letter instructed him to report to headquarters immediately.

<sup>(7)</sup>**master** /'mæstə/: thành thạo

Ví dụ: She never completely mastered the art of lip-reading.

## 4. Have you ever helped someone who got lost?

→ Yes, I've used my knowledge to help a lot of people. It is **common sense**<sup>(8)</sup> to ask for directions in Vietnam, so whenever people **pull over**<sup>(9)</sup> and ask me for directions, I always try my best to guide them to their **destination**<sup>(10)</sup>.

<sup>(8)</sup>**common sense** /ˌkɑːmən 'sens/: ý thức thông thường

Ví dụ: It's common sense to keep medicines away from children.

<sup>(9)</sup>**pull over (phrasal verb)**: tắt vào (khi đang lái xe)

Ví dụ: She saw the ambulance coming up behind her and pulled over.

<sup>(10)</sup>**destination** /ˌdestɪ'neɪʃn/: điểm đến

Ví dụ: Our luggage was checked all the way through to our final destination.



# Concentration



1.46

## 1. Is it difficult for you to stay focused on something?

→ Yes, especially when I'm at home. There are too many **sources of distraction**<sup>(1)</sup>, like my phone, my bed, or my family. So, whenever I need to **meet deadlines**<sup>(2)</sup>, I always go to other places, such as a café, so that I can focus 100% on my work.

<sup>(1)</sup>**a source of distraction**: một nguồn gây xao lãng

**source** /sɔːs/: nguồn

**distraction** /dɪstrækʃən/: sự xao lãng

*Ví dụ: It's so distracting and, of course, as a writer e-mail is already such a source of distraction.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**meet deadlines**: hoàn thành công việc đúng hạn

**meet** /mi:t/: đạt được, hoàn thành

**deadlines** /'dedlaɪn/: hạn chót hoàn thành công việc

*Ví dụ: Do you think we will be able to meet our deadline?*

## 2. What do you do to help you concentrate?

→ I've read a lot about this topic on the internet, about how yoga or **meditation**<sup>(3)</sup> can help people focus. But I'm not really keen on that kind of thing, so instead, I try to do some exercise in the morning to keep my brain active. In addition, I try to avoid **multitasking**<sup>(4)</sup> so that I can **devote myself to**<sup>(5)</sup> one particular task at a time.

<sup>(3)</sup>**meditation** /ˌmedɪ'teɪʃn/: thiền

*Ví dụ: She found peace through yoga and meditation.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**multitasking** /ˌmʌlti'taːskɪŋ/: đa nhiệm

*Ví dụ: The job requires a person who is good at multitasking.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**devote oneself to something**: cống hiến hết bản thân cho một việc gì đó

*Ví dụ: She devoted herself to her career.*

## 3. What may distract you when you're trying to stay focused?

→ Without a doubt, my phone. Due to a lot of entertaining apps on smartphones, it is very **tempting**<sup>(6)</sup> to use your phone, even when you really want to get something done. Thinking of those apps interrupts my **train of thought**<sup>(7)</sup>, which seriously **gives me a hard time**<sup>(8)</sup>, negatively affecting my productivity.

<sup>(6)</sup>**tempt** /tempt/: dụ dỗ

*Ví dụ: I was tempted by the dessert menu.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**train of thought (n)**: dòng suy nghĩ

*Ví dụ: My train of thought is sometimes under the direct control of my will.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**give someone a hard time (idiom)**: gây khó khăn cho ai đó

*Ví dụ: They really gave me a hard time at the interview.*

## 4. When do you need to be focused?

→ There are a lot of situations that require total concentration. When driving, I need to **pay full attention to**<sup>(9)</sup> the road. Or when I need to finish assignments from work, I need to **work my fingers to the bone**<sup>(10)</sup>, so concentration is vital.

<sup>(9)</sup>**pay attention to something**: chú ý về một cái gì đó

**pay** /peɪ/: thực hiện

**attention** /ə'tenʃn/: sự chú ý

*Ví dụ: Please pay attention to what I am saying.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**work my fingers to the bone (idiom)**: làm việc rất vất vả

*Ví dụ: In those days we got up at 5 in the morning, and worked our fingers to the bone.*

# Shoes



1.47

## 1. Do you like buying shoes?

→ No, I'm not a very **fashionable**<sup>(1)</sup> person so I'm not a big fan of buying clothing or **footwear**<sup>(2)</sup>. I only buy shoes when it is necessary. The last time I bought some was a year ago, when I needed a pair of trainers to go jogging with my friends.

<sup>(1)</sup>**fashionable** /'fæʃnəbl/: thời trang, hợp mốt

Ví dụ: He was laughed at by his more fashionable friends.

<sup>(2)</sup>**footwear** /'fʊtweɪ/: giày, dép

Ví dụ: Be sure to wear the correct footwear to prevent injuries to your feet.

## 2. Have you ever bought shoes online?

→ Yes, once. I remember that there was an **end-of-season sale**<sup>(3)</sup>, all the products, even those from **well-known brands**<sup>(4)</sup>, were discounted online. I saw that it was **the chance of a lifetime**<sup>(5)</sup> so I decided to buy 2 pairs of shoes, one for me and one for my girlfriend.

<sup>(3)</sup>**end-of-season sale**: kì giảm giá cuối mùa

Ví dụ: Get 50% off camping equipment in our end-of-season sale.

<sup>(4)</sup>**well-known brands**: những thương hiệu nổi tiếng

**well-known** /wel 'nəʊn/: nổi tiếng

**brand** /brænd/: thương hiệu

Ví dụ: We are such a well-known brand for good or in some cases for bad.

<sup>(5)</sup>**the chance of a lifetime (idiom)**: cơ hội hiếm có

Ví dụ: Make sure you take advantage of our sale, it's the chance of a lifetime!

## 3. How much money do you usually spend on shoes?

→ Not much, I'm not crazy about shoes. I don't really understand why some people **squander**<sup>(6)</sup> their money on shoes. I only buy **affordable**<sup>(7)</sup> shoes and try to avoid expensive brands. I don't want to get into any **financial problems**<sup>(8)</sup> just because of shoes.

<sup>(6)</sup>**squander** /'skwɑːndər/: hoang phí

Ví dụ: He squandered all his money on gambling.

<sup>(7)</sup>**affordable** /ə'fɔːdəbl/: (giá cả) có thể mua được

Ví dụ: There is a lack of affordable housing in the city.

<sup>(8)</sup>**financial problems**: vấn đề về tài chính

**financial** /fə'nænsjəl/

**problem** /'prɒːbləm/

Ví dụ: Having financial problems means being unable to pay debts over the short or long term.

## 4. Which do you prefer, fashionable shoes or comfortable shoes?

→ Comfortable, obviously. I don't really care whether my shoes are **trendy**<sup>(9)</sup> or not, I don't want to become a **fashionista**<sup>(10)</sup> or anything. I need them to be comfy so that I can do anything I want. Therefore, I **place a high premium on**<sup>(11)</sup> comfort.

<sup>(9)</sup>**trendy** /'trendi/: theo xu hướng

Ví dụ: People are buying them just to be trendy.

<sup>(10)</sup>**fashionista (n)**: tín đồ thời trang

Ví dụ: She is the stylish, trendy, shopaholic fashionista of the group.

<sup>(11)</sup>**place a high premium on something (idiom)**: xem một cái gì đó rất quan trọng

Ví dụ: They put a high premium on prevention and primary care.

# **IELTS**

## **Speaking Part 2 & 3**

# A skill

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a skill that you think you can teach other people.

You should say:

- What it is
- When you learned it
- How you can teach others
- And how you feel about this skill

### Answer

Well, the skill that I think I can teach other people well is beer tasting. I know this skill may sound a bit odd to you, and some people may even ask “why on earth do I have to learn how to taste something too familiar like beer?”. The thing is ... the world of “beer” is much more complex than what most of us usually think. There are over 10 types of beer available in the world, not to mention the **subtypes**<sup>(2)</sup> that some brewers can sometimes add to the list. Each type carries different characteristics and can bring people different experiences.

Beer tasting is also a **complex**<sup>(1)</sup> skill as it requires the taste-tester to have a strong sense of smell and taste and also a lot of practice to be able to evaluate a beer. I first learned this skill about 6 years ago from my manager when I was working at a restaurant. Knowing this skill has opened a whole new world to me.

The teaching of this skill is quite simple, and that’s why I’m confident to teach it. Getting it or not, however, depends greatly on the learner. There are clear **criteria**<sup>(3)</sup> and steps for one to fully taste a beer. First, we judge a beer by its appearance. Each type of beer has a distinct colour, like amber for IPA, black for stout and porter, ... Then we need to feel its **aroma**<sup>(4)</sup>, or simply say its smell. After that is the main stage when we taste it. Different beers will bring different **mouthfeels**<sup>(5)</sup> and **aftertastes**<sup>(6)</sup>. But we need a lot of time and a lot of trials to get through all the types of beer in the world.

Well, that’s everything I want to tell you about this topic. If you still want to talk about beer, then we’ll talk after the test.

**1. Complex** /'kɒm.pleks/: phức hợp, chứa nhiều thành phần.

Ví dụ: A complex building: tòa nhà được sử dụng cho nhiều mục đích (trung tâm mua sắm, văn phòng, nhà ở trong cùng một tòa nhà).

Phân biệt: Complicated: phức tạp, khó hiểu

**2. Subtypes** /'sʌb.taɪps/: các loại/ nhánh phụ

Ví dụ: Mammals can be divided into three subtypes based on how their babies develop

**3. Criteria** /kraɪ'tɪəriə/: tiêu chí (số ít: criterion)

Ví dụ: She failed to meet the strict selection criteria.

**4. Aroma** /ə'raʊmə/: mùi (chủ yếu dùng cho đồ ăn và đồ uống)

Ví dụ: The aroma of fresh coffee

**5. Mouthfeel** /'maʊθ.fi:l/: cảm nhận trong miệng (dùng khi nói về đồ ăn và đồ uống)

Ví dụ: Starches enhance the mouthfeel of processed foods

**6. Aftertaste** /'ɑ:ftəsteɪst/: hậu vị

Ví dụ: The medicine left an unpleasant aftertaste.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Which do you think is more important, practical skills or academic skills?

Well, both are important, I think, and it depends on the context to decide which one is more important. For example, if we talk about daily family life, then practical skills like communication can be more important since it mostly involves **friendly conversations**<sup>(1)</sup> and solving everyday problems. But if we talk about studying or working, then academic skills are also important since many jobs and subjects involve calculations, reading for information or delivering a professional message. This is when we need something like mathematics, critical reading or writing.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Friendly conversations:** cuộc đối thoại thân mật

**Friendly** /'frend.li/: thân mật, thân thiện

**conversations** /,kɒn.və'seɪ.ʃən/: cuộc đối thoại

Ví dụ: *It all begins with a friendly conversation in a queue.*

### 2. Do you think schools now provide enough skills for students' future job?

I don't think so. From my experience, schools **place too much emphasis on academic knowledge**<sup>(2)</sup> while paying little attention to providing students with practical skills. But when students enter employment, what they need is practical skills like communication or teamwork, not some kind of knowledge about poetry or complex chemical formulas.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Place too much emphasis on something:** quá chú trọng vào một thứ gì đó

**emphasis** /'em.fə.sɪs/: nhấn mạnh, chú trọng

Ví dụ: *Some people think that schools should not pay too much emphasis on art subjects.*

### 3. What can young people do to learn or improve the necessary skills for their work?

Well, there are plenty of things they can do. For example, there are now hundreds of courses that teach nearly all kinds of skills, so they just need to sign up for one and then learn. Or they can just read every day. Books contain a lot of useful knowledge about the skills we need to be able to **thrive**<sup>(3)</sup> in the workplace. They can learn a lot just simply by reading, I believe. Another way is to ask for help from their bosses or colleagues at work.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Thrive** /θraɪv/: phát triển, tăng trưởng để thành công

Ví dụ: *His business thrived in the years before the war.*

# An important truth

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you told your friend an important truth.

You should say:

- Who your friend is
- What the truth was
- What your friend's reaction was
- And explain why you think it was important to tell your friend the truth

### Answer

Well, my close friend has told me **countless**<sup>(1)</sup> things so far, but the most important thing was about my girlfriend cheating on me. Things happened about 3 years ago, when we just graduated from university.

My girlfriend and I had been in a relationship for over 4 years before the incident. We bumped into each other on the first day at university and then became a couple. About 2 months after my graduation, I noticed some strange behaviour from my girlfriend: she seemed to pay less attention to my messages, and when she was with me, she **sneakily texted someone**<sup>(2)</sup> on the phone. She said that it was just an old friend, but I didn't believe that.

Then I decided to ask my close friend to be my private detective and find out if there was anything **fishy**<sup>(3)</sup> behind all those strange things. After a week, I received the info from my friend that my girlfriend was dating another guy. I wasn't surprised though, since I had already thought that based on what she had been doing. However, here's the plot twist of the story. My friend didn't tell me the whole truth. The other part of the truth was that my girlfriend was dating him, yes, my close friend. They were both doing something unacceptable behind my back.

After finding out everything, I came to both of them and said that I didn't ever want to see either of them again. It was painful to know that the ones I loved most were the ones that betrayed me. They did apologise but I said it was too late. And that's everything I want to say about this topic.

1. **Countless** /'kaunt.ləs/: Nhiều không đếm nổi

Ví dụ: *I've heard it played countless times on the radio.*

2. **Sneakily text someone**: nhắn tin cho ai đó một cách lén lút

**Sneakily** /'sni:.kəl.i/: lén lút

**text** /tekst/ (v): nhắn tin

Ví dụ: *During the exam, she sneakily texted her friend to ask for the answer.*

3. **Fishy** /'fɪʃ.i/: mờ ám, không trung thực

Ví dụ: *There's something fishy going on here.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think we should tell the truth at all times?

Well, I agree that being honest is a valuable trait, but there are still some cases in which telling the truth isn't a **wise thing**<sup>(1)</sup> to do, especially when the truth is too painful. For example, the truth about the condition of a cancer patient may be **heart-breaking**<sup>(2)</sup>, so sometimes a doctor needs to lie to the patient's relatives to avoid shocking them.

<sup>(1)</sup>**A wise thing:** Điều khôn ngoan  
**wise** /waɪz/: khôn ngoan

Ví dụ: *I don't think travelling is a wise thing to do during the Covid-19 pandemic.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Heart-breaking** /'hɑ:t,breɪ.kɪŋ/: đau lòng

Ví dụ: *It is heartbreaking that he cannot see his children.*

### 2. How can we know when others are telling lies?

I think we can tell through their behaviour. For example, some people may use a different **tone of voice**<sup>(3)</sup> when lying. Others may show nervousness on their face. But there are some expert liars who show nothing, and it's very hard to identify them.

<sup>(3)</sup>**tone of voice:** Tông giọng  
**voice** /vɔɪs/: giọng nói

Ví dụ: *He has such a special tone of voice that can be easily recognized everywhere.*

### 3. Is it important to teach children to be honest?

I think it's crucial. Honesty is one of the most important traits of a well-rounded citizen. Children can't grow up to be good people if they lie all the time. **Big liars**<sup>(4)</sup> are never welcomed in our society.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Big liar:** kẻ nói dối trắng trợn

**Big** /bɪg/: To, lớn

**liar** /'laɪ.ər/: người nói dối

Ví dụ: *I can't never be friends with people like her, who are big liars.*

# A piece of international news

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a piece of international news you recently heard

You should say:

- What it was about
- Where and when you heard it
- What you were doing when you heard it
- And explain how you felt about it

### Answer

Well, I pay a lot of attention to politics, especially the US presidential election. So the most recent piece of news that I've heard was the one about Big Tech companies banning President Trump from their platforms.

I read this piece of news from various sources, like Fox news, BBC or Politico. According to the info, things happened after rioters attacked Capitol Hill in the White House in a protest against the victory of Joe Biden. Twitter, Facebook and many other social media platforms **suspended**<sup>(1)</sup> President Trump's account and claimed that it was to "prevent possible violent threats from his posts".

Upon receiving this news, I was shocked because I didn't think that Big Tech companies would behave like that. The president may have done something wrong during his **administration**<sup>(2)</sup> but deciding whether he actually triggered the **riot**<sup>(3)</sup> or not is the authority of the court, not Facebook or Twitter or any private companies. Besides, these companies couldn't show any evidence of Trump pulling the strings behind the violence.

I think this piece of news is a strong warning for us about the power that the media and Big Tech companies are holding right now. I've deactivated my Facebook account right after reading that news.

**1. Suspend** /sə'spend/: Đình chỉ, dừng hoạt động

Ví dụ: *He was suspended for four games after arguing with the referee.*

**2. Administration (politics)**

/əd,mɪn.ɪ'streɪ.ʃən/: chính quyền

Ví dụ: *The new administration is still in the shakedown period.*

**3. Riot** /'raɪ.ət/: cuộc bạo loạn

Ví dụ: *Food protests and riots have erupted in more than 30 countries.*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. How do Vietnamese people usually get news?

We Vietnamese get the news from various sources. The internet is the most popular way to read the news here. Almost everyone has a smartphone or laptop now, so it's easy for them to just go to an online news website and read the latest articles. Some people still prefer traditional newspapers though, and some get the news from their friends or neighbours.

### 2. Which kind of news is more popular? Domestic news or international news?

Well, it's very hard to say as it depends a lot on each person's preference. Some people care a lot about domestic events while others pay more attention to things that happen **beyond their country's border**<sup>(2)</sup>. I think we need some **statistics**<sup>(1)</sup> to know exactly which type is more popular.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Statistics** /stə'tɪs.tɪks/: số liệu thống kê

Ví dụ: *The statistics show that, in general, women live longer than men.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Beyond one's country border**: nằm ngoài biên giới quốc gia

**Border** /'bɔː.dər/: biên giới

Ví dụ: *I'm not really interested in things happening beyond my country border.*

### 3. How is the news media changing recently?

It has changed a lot, in both positive and negative ways. On the bright side, news is now much more accessible than in the past since everything is now available on the internet. But on the downside, the news on many media channels is getting less reliable, and on some platforms like Facebook it's even **like a mess**<sup>(3)</sup> since it's very hard to tell which piece of news is real or fake.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Be like a mess**: như một mớ hỗn độn  
**Mess** /mes/: hỗn độn, lộn xộn

Ví dụ: *I feel like my life is like a mess but I don't know how to fix it.*

# Imagination

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

**Describe a time you needed to use your imagination**

You should say:

- When it was
- Why you needed to use imagination
- How difficult or easy it was
- And explain how you felt about it

### Answer

Well, the most recent time when I needed to use my imagination was about a week ago. I had to prepare for a presentation at university, and the lecturer required me to tell the whole class what I'd do if I were to become a millionaire.

I'm still a poor student who is always **on a tight budget**<sup>(1)</sup>, so of course I had no idea what it was like to be rich. Therefore, I searched for the biography of some famous business people in the world to find some clues for my **imaginary story**<sup>(2)</sup>. You know, it wasn't very hard to make up a story like that. In my story, I imagined myself becoming a millionaire who still maintains a minimalist lifestyle. I wouldn't spend my money on expensive clothes, fancy cars or any luxurious things. Instead, I'd just keep my spending at the level of an average worker and use the rest of my money to establish a **charitable organisation**<sup>(3)</sup>, just like what Bill Gates and many other rich people are doing.

However, my presentation didn't go very well since the lecturer didn't seem to like my idea of a rich person like that. But it was all my imagination could come up with, so I was still happy because at least I tried my best.

**1. To be on a tight budget:** Có ngân sách eo hẹp

**Tight** /taɪt/: eo hẹp

**Budget** /'bʌdʒ.ɪt/: ngân sách

Ví dụ: *I haven't got a job yet, so I'm living on a tight budget.*

**2. Imaginary story:** câu chuyện mang tính tưởng tượng

**Imaginary** /ɪ'mædʒ.ɪ.nəri/: tính tưởng tượng

**Story** /'stɔː.ri/: câu chuyện

Ví dụ: *Children are really keen on imaginary stories.*

**3. Charitable organisation:** tổ chức từ thiện

**Charitable** /'tʃær.ə.tə.bəl/: từ thiện

**Organisation** /ˌɔː.gən.aɪ'zeɪ.ʃən/: tổ chức

Ví dụ: *Private foundations have been long term supporters of funding to charitable organisations around the world*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think adults can have lots of imagination?

Of course they can still imagine a lot of things. However, adult thinking has already been **shaped**<sup>(1)</sup> by their knowledge and life experience, so their imagination tends to be limited within a certain boundary. Children, on the other hand, are carefree so they can imagine whatever they want.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Shape** /ʃeɪp/ (v): định hình

Ví dụ: *You are helping to shape the future of this country.*

### 2. What kinds of jobs need imagination?

Well, the first type of job that springs to my mind is art-related careers. Jobs like being an architect, painter, music composer, film director, ... require a strong imagination as they have to create a lot of images in their mind before being able to produce any results. Business leaders also require imagination because they need to **envision**<sup>(2)</sup> the future of a company before making a plan to **turn their ideas into reality**<sup>(3)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Envision** /ɪnˈvɪʒ.ən/: tưởng tượng ra

Ví dụ: *The company envisions adding at least five stores next year.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Turn something into reality**: biến cái gì thành hiện thực

**Turn** /tɜːn/: xoay, chuyển

**Reality** /rɪˈæl.ə.ti/: thực tại

Ví dụ: *I'm working hard to earn enough money so that I can turn my dream into reality.*

### 3. What subjects are helpful for children's imagination?

Personally, I think literature will do wonders for children's imaginations as it helps children to visualise the story they read in their own mind. Also, art and music can be helpful because children have to imagine a picture before drawing or imagine a story being narrated in a song.

# A polite person

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a polite person you know.

You should say:

- Who he/she is
- How you knew him/her
- What he/she is like
- And explain why you think he/she is polite

### Answer

Now I'm going to talk about a friend of mine, Nam. He and I were classmates in high school and university, and now he's working as a software engineer at Microsoft Vietnam.

I first met him about 10 years ago when we both entered high school. At that time, he was a naughty student who often **played truant**<sup>(1)</sup>, but somehow he still **ended up**<sup>(2)</sup> getting very high scores in every test. He wasn't very polite at that time, or you might even say he was very rude, even to our female classmates. His words showed very little respect towards others.

However, he's a lot different now. Since university, he has learned to be more polite, especially with women. The main reason for this change is the breakup with his girlfriend after high school. His girlfriend left just because of his impolite behaviour, even with her. After that, he **vowed**<sup>(3)</sup> to change and become a new, better person. Now I think he has all the qualities of a polite person: he considers his words very carefully before saying anything; he says thankyou and he apologises when needed; he respects the people around him. I'm quite impressed with his behaviour now. I think politeness is something we should all have. You know, if we're polite to people, they'll return the politeness to us.

**1. Play truant:** cúp học

**Truant** /'tru:ənt/: học sinh trốn học

*Ví dụ: When I was a schoolboy, I often played truant, which upset my parents a lot.*

**2. End up (doing) something:** kết thúc bằng việc (làm) gì đó

*Ví dụ: Although he was a lazy student at first, he ended up graduating from high school with excellent grades.*

**3. Vow** /vaʊ/: thề

*Ví dụ: He vowed (that) he had not hurt her.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What behaviour will be regarded as impolite?

Well, there is a lot of impolite behaviour nowadays, things like not willing to listen or using inappropriate language. Being polite means that we need to pay attention to and care about other people's feelings, and the opposite things mean being impolite. For example, many of us have seen impolite men speaking **insulting words**<sup>(1)</sup> to others.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Insulting words:** lời lẽ xúc phạm.

**Insulting** /ɪn'sʌltɪŋ/: mang tính xúc phạm

*Ví dụ: He can say anything but use insulting words for my parents.*

### 2. How can people become more polite?

Through learning and paying attention. That's the only way. Politeness is a product of our environment, not something we were born with, so we can gain it from experience. We can learn to be polite from observing the people around us, like our parents, or maybe from the internet. There are several websites that provide us with information about being polite. But the most important thing is that we need to practice it. It's no use learning something if we don't **put it into use**<sup>(2)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Put something into use:** đưa một thứ gì đó vào thực tiễn.

*Ví dụ: Students need some practice time to put everything they have learnt at school into use.*

### 3. Do you think Vietnamese people are becoming more polite than before?

I think yes. In the past, education wasn't accessible to everyone, so I think many people didn't get to learn about being polite, but now almost everyone goes to school, has access to knowledge **beyond our borders**<sup>(3)</sup>, so there should be more polite people now. You can see that now we have more polite shopkeepers than before. In the past, these people were often said to be very rude, but now they're quite friendly and willing to listen.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Beyond our borders:** nằm ngoài biên giới.

**Beyond** /brɪ'jɑ:nd/: vượt ra khỏi, nằm ngoài

**Border** /'bɔ:rdə/: biên giới

*Ví dụ: We should help people in need beyond our borders.*

# A promise

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

**Describe a time you made a promise to someone.**

You should say:

- What the promise was
- To whom you made it
- Whether it was easy or difficult to keep
- And explain why you made it

### Answer

I want to tell you about the time I promised to take my girlfriend to my hometown. It happened just about 4 months ago. At that time, both of us were having a **nerve-racking time**<sup>(1)</sup>, so we decided that it was finally time we should **blow off some steam**<sup>(2)</sup> by taking a trip somewhere, or else we'd both go crazy.

Then I realised that she'd never been to my hometown – Hanoi, so I made a promise to her that I'd take her to my hometown to see my parents and all the things there. We made a plan about 2 months before the trip. During that 2 months, a lot of things came up and there was even a short while I thought that we couldn't make it. However, I still managed to **fulfil my promise**<sup>(3)</sup>, and we actually had a very good trip together.

I think making promises is something that everyone does, but we need to be responsible for our own words. If we promise something, we should try to fulfil it at any cost, or else people will lose trust in us.

**1. A nerve-racking time:** thời gian căng thẳng, mệt mỏi.

*Nerve-racking* /'nɜːrɪv rækɪŋ/: căng thẳng, mệt mỏi

*Ví dụ: After a nerve-racking time preparing for the exam, we decided to take a trip to Dalat to release stress.*

**2. Blow off some steam:** xả hơi.

**Steam** /sti:m/: hơi nước

*Ví dụ: Travelling helps me blow off some steam after stressful time at work.*

**3. Fulfil one's promise:** giữ lời hứa

**Fulfil** /fʊl'fɪl/: thực hiện, hoàn thành

**Promise** /'prɒ:mɪs/: lời hứa

*Ví dụ: Everyone can make promises, but not all of them can fulfil their promises.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kinds of promises do people often make?

It's very hard to answer this question because people make all kinds of promises. For instance, some people promise their friends or family a present or a surprise; doctors promise to save a patient; employees promise to **meet their deadlines**<sup>(1)</sup>; ... We can make promises with basically everything, you know, so it's very hard to define any particular "kinds" of promise here.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Meet the deadline**: hoàn thành đúng deadline.

Ví dụ: *I have to work overtime in order to meet the deadline.*

### 2. Do you think it's important for children to learn to keep their promises?

Of course, it's important. Whether one can fulfil their promises will determine their reliability and **credibility**<sup>(2)</sup> in other people's eyes. If you make a promise to someone and fail to keep it, it's likely that people will lose their trust in you. So if we want our children to grow up to be reliable people, we definitely have to teach them to keep their promises.

<sup>(2)</sup>**Credibility** /ˌkredəˈbɪləti/: sự tin cậy.

Ví dụ: *After the recent scandal, that politician has lost all credibility.*

### 3. Do you think we can trust the promises of celebrities?

Definitely not. From what I know, famous people make thousands of promises per day, so sometimes they can't even remember their promises, **let alone**<sup>(3)</sup> fulfill what they say. For example, they may promise to make the music industry great again in one TV show, and then promise to **erase poverty**<sup>(4)</sup> in another show, but eventually none of these things are done.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Let alone**: chứ đừng nói đến

Ví dụ: *There isn't enough room for us, let alone any guests.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Erase poverty**: xóa bỏ sự nghèo đói.

**Poverty** /ˈpɔːvərti/: sự đói nghèo

Ví dụ: *The government should have policies to erase poverty.*

# A special hotel

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a special hotel you have stayed in

You should say:

- Where it is
- What it is like
- Why you went there
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

Ok. I'm gonna tell you about a small, lovely hotel named Sapis located in Sa Pa, a mountainous town in the north west of Vietnam. My girlfriend and I went to this place just about 4 or 5 months ago, and we were quite satisfied with our stay there.

This hotel is a little bit hard to find since it's on top of a small hill and the addresses there aren't really well-organised. The first impression we had upon finding the hotel was a cosy, well-decorated place. There wasn't anything very colourful in the entrance hall, but things still looked nice and warm, though the weather was **freezing**<sup>(1)</sup> at that time. The receptionist was also friendly and hospitable, and then we found that he was also the owner, and the chef. What a **multi-talented**<sup>(2)</sup> guy!

When we got into our room, we were stunned by the **spectacular view**<sup>(3)</sup> from the window. It **overlooks**<sup>(4)</sup> the whole town and also ranges of mountains. The scene was like what's usually described in poems. Just like in many other hotels, the room was fully furnished. Everything was still in good condition. We stayed there for 3 nights and checked out on the 4th day to return to Hanoi.

It was quite a pleasant stay in a hotel with good facilities and a hospitable, welcoming owner. I will surely book that hotel again if I ever go back to Sa Pa.

**1. Freezing** /'fri:zɪŋ/: lạnh cóng

Ví dụ: *It's snowing outside. My hands are freezing!*

**2. multi-talented** /ˌmʌlti 'tæləntɪd/: đa tài

Ví dụ: *Charlie Puth is well-known for being a multi-talented artist.*

**3. Spectacular view:** cảnh quan tuyệt đẹp

**Spectacular** /spek'tækjələ/: đẹp mắt, ngoạn mục

**View** /vjʊ:/: cảnh

Ví dụ: *When choosing a place to travel to, I often opt for places with spectacular views.*

**4. Overlook** /ˌəʊvər'lʊk/: nhìn ra (từ một vị trí nhất định)

Ví dụ: *This restaurant overlooks the lake in the North.*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do the ratings of hotels influence people's choices?

In many cases, yes. Nowadays many people search for ratings and reviews of many hotels before deciding which one to stay in, and the ones with higher ratings are usually favoured. If people see one hotel with a 3.5-star rating and another with a 4.7-star, there's over 90% chance they'll go for the latter.

### 2. Do you think we should spend a lot of money on accommodation when travelling?

It depends on your purpose and also your budget because they're the determining factors when you stay somewhere on a trip. If you travel to discover a new place, then I think it's better to go for something cheap because you won't spend much time at the hotel. It's just a place to sleep, so it'll be a waste if you rent something too expensive. But, if you have a lot of money, then you can just **splash out**<sup>(1)</sup> on the most expensive place you can. But if you have a tight budget, I don't think paying too much for a hotel room is a great idea.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Splash** /splæʃ/ **out**: chi rất nhiều tiền vào một thứ gì đó (thường là không thật sự cần thiết).  
*Ví dụ We're going to splash out and buy a new car.*

# A perfect job

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a perfect job you would like to have in the future

You should say:

- What it is
- How you knew it
- What it is like
- And explain why you think it is perfect

### Answer

Well, I don't think there's a perfect job in this world because everything has its drawbacks. However, the most "perfect" job, in my opinion, would be that of a doctor. This is a very popular job, but also a very hard one, and of course not everyone can do it. I first knew about it when I was just a small kid and my mother once expected me to become a doctor, though I **couldn't live up to her expectations**<sup>(1)</sup>.

I'd have to say that it's probably one of the toughest occupations, since it involves saving people's lives – one slight mistake can have **fatal consequences**<sup>(2)</sup>. As I understand, a person would require at least 10 years of training, including 6 years in university and 4 years practising in hospitals. After that, the person also needs to work very hard to constantly **sharpen their skills**<sup>(3)</sup> and climb the career ladder.

I think this job is among the most "perfect" careers mainly because doctors save people's lives, and bring back hope to people who are struggling with diseases and illnesses. A doctor not only needs strong medical skills but also a good **morality**<sup>(4)</sup>. A doctor needs to **put the life and safety of their patients before anything else**<sup>(5)</sup>. That's what I see to be behind this career and also what makes it perfect compared to others

**1. Live up to one's expectations:** sống theo đúng kỳ vọng của ai đó.

**Expectation** /ˌekspekˈteɪʃn/: sự kỳ vọng

*Ví dụ: The event did not live up to expectations because there were only a few people coming.*

**2. Fatal consequences:** hậu quả chết người

**Fatal** /ˈfeɪtl/: gây chết người

**Consequence** /ˈkɒnsɪkwɪns/: hậu quả

*Ví dụ: Playing with electricity might cause fatal consequences for children.*

**3. Sharpen one's skills:** mài dũa kỹ năng của ai đó

**Sharpen** /ˈʃɑːrpən/: mài dũa

**Skill** /skɪl/: kỹ năng

*Ví dụ: I spent 2 years studying English in a foreign country to sharpen my speaking skills.*

**4. Morality** /məˈræləti/: đạo đức

*Ví dụ: Standards of morality seem to be dropping these days.*

**5. Put something before something:** đặt một điều lên trước điều gì khác

*Ví dụ: She's a selfish person. She always puts herself before others.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Should parents choose the career for their children or should children be allowed to choose the career they want?

Personally, I think children should decide what they do in the future. Parents can guide children, but they should never make any decisions on their children's behalf. Parents can't live with their children forever, it's a fact, so children should learn how to decide things for themselves, starting with their career.

### 2. What is the most difficult thing when someone chooses their own career?

I think the most difficult thing isn't the career itself, but it's the goal that a person wants to achieve. Our career is important, but basically it's a tool for people to **achieve their ultimate goal**<sup>(1)</sup> in life. For example, if a person wants to **reform the education system**<sup>(2)</sup>, they should make a start by becoming a teacher, and then take further steps by running an education company and eventually make changes in the system.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Achieve one's ultimate goal:** đạt được mục tiêu cuối cùng.

**Achieve** /ə'tʃi:v/: đạt được

**Ultimate** /'ʌltɪmət/: cuối cùng

**Goal** /gəʊl/: mục tiêu

Ví dụ: *I'll do whatever it takes to achieve my ultimate goal in life.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Reform the education system:** cải cách hệ thống giáo dục.

**Reform** /rɪ'fɔ:rm/: cải cách

**Education** /,edʒu'keɪʃn/: giáo dục

**System** /'sɪstəm/: hệ thống

Ví dụ: *After reforming the education system, the government received positive reactions from citizens.*

### 3. Do you think we should still expect a stable career nowadays?

No, it's the dumbest idea that I've ever heard of. The world is **constantly changing**<sup>(3)</sup>, and so is our career. For example, many things like shoes are now being produced by machines, rather than skilled workers like in the past, so people can't rely on having a stable job like a shoemaker. People need to get better every day. The term "stable job" has already become **a thing of the past**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Constantly changing:** Thay đổi liên tục.

**Constantly** /'kɑ:nstəntli/: một cách liên tục

Ví dụ: *Fashion is constantly changing.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**A thing of the past:** thứ đã thuộc về quá khứ và hiện giờ không còn giá trị

**Past** /pæst/: quá khứ

Ví dụ: *My long hair is like a thing of the past. I've had this bob hair for almost 10 years.*

# A home

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a home that you visited but did not want to live in

You should say:

- Where it is
- What it is like
- Why you visited it
- And explain why you would not like to live there

### Answer

If you ask me about a home I don't want to live in, that's definitely my cousin's house. He's now living in the centre of Hanoi – the capital of Vietnam. I went to his house quite often when I was at school.

This is just a normal house like many others. It's not too big and has about 6 rooms in total. From the outside, there's nothing special about it, but the inside is something that makes me concerned. My cousin is quite a lazy person, and he isn't into cleaning at all. So, the first impression that someone has when visiting his house, especially his room, is that it's very **dirty**<sup>(1)</sup> and **messy**<sup>(2)</sup>. I could see his used food boxes and soft drink cans lying right next to his clothes, from his bed to his computer desk.

The structure of the house also has a lot of problems. There's something wrong with the water system so sometimes my cousin can't get water out of his shower. The electric wires also need to be relocated into the walls since now they're making the house look quite **creepy**<sup>(3)</sup>.

Personally, I'm a tidy person, so I could never stand living in such a place. If I have my own house, it will look clean and organised all the time.

**1. Dirty** /'dɜːrti/: dơ bẩn

*Ví dụ: She didn't want to get her dress dirty.*

**2. Messy** /'mesi/: bừa bộn

*Ví dụ: The children got really messy playing in the woods.*

**3. Creepy** /'kriːpi/: rùng rợn

*Ví dụ: It feels a bit creepy in here. It's so dark!*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What are the housing problems that people in your country are facing?

I think the biggest housing problems in Vietnam are prices and locations. You know, accommodation in city centres is usually **exorbitantly expensive**<sup>(1)</sup>, and usually people with an average income cannot afford a home in such areas. If they buy a house on the outskirts or countryside, the price will be much lower, but it would take a lot of time to commute every day. For example, houses in Ho Chi Minh city are now too expensive for the majority of workers, and some people have to live in nearby provinces and then spend 2 to 3 hours per day travelling to work and back.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Exorbitantly expensive**: đắt cắt cổ.

**Exorbitantly** /ɪgˈzɔːbɪtəntli/: cao, nhiều một cách quá đáng

**Expensive** /ɪkˈspensɪv/: đắt

Ví dụ: *Food in this restaurant is exorbitantly expensive.*

### 2. Do you think it's getting more difficult to buy a house? Why?

Yes, it's something a lot of people can see. Houses, especially in urban areas, are usually something **beyond the reach**<sup>(2)</sup> of most workers when you consider their income. For example, an average person in Ho Chi Minh City can make about 20 million VND per month, and the average house price is about 3 billion VND. So, it will take this person at least 12 to 13 years to be able to afford a house at that price. But you know things are even more difficult because of **inflation**<sup>(3)</sup>, right?

<sup>(2)</sup>**Beyond the reach**: nằm ngoài tầm với.

**Beyond** /bɪˈjɑːnd/: vượt qua, vượt khỏi

**Reach** /riːtʃ/: tầm với

Ví dụ: *For me, studying abroad is beyond the reach. My family can never afford that.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Inflation** /ɪnˈfleɪʃn/: lạm phát.

Ví dụ: *Wage increases must be in line with inflation.*

### 3. How do you think houses will change in the future?

I'm not sure what things will be like in the future because, you know, the world is changing rapidly, and we can't predict what's coming. For example, houses in the future can be bigger or smaller, there may be more apartment buildings, or maybe in the next 20 years we can make flying houses. The world isn't what it used to be, so I think there's nothing we can predict, at least for now.

# An unforgettable bike trip

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

**Describe an unforgettable bike trip you had**

You should say:

- When it was
- Where you went
- Who you were with
- And explain why you think it was unforgettable

### Answer

I haven't cycled for a long time. The last time I can remember was at least 10 years ago, when I was still in high school.

One day, I decided to take my bike out for a long ride to the outskirts (mostly because I had too much free time and nothing to do). Everything was alright at first. I really enjoyed the trip as I slowly enjoyed all the things around me – the very simple things that I usually didn't notice because of my **dizzying**<sup>(1)</sup> study schedule. I could feel the rush of people dealing with their daily problems, the joy of children playing on sidewalks. Then, came the bad thing: the sky suddenly turned grey, and **thunder started to roar**<sup>(2)</sup>. At that time, I was already on the outskirts, and it was an open space, so there was no place for me to hide from the rain. To make the matter worse, my **tyre suddenly went flat**<sup>(3)</sup> because it hit something sharp on the road. I had to walk it in the rain for nearly 10 kilometres.

When I got home, of course I was soaking wet, and my parents weren't very happy with that. I then got sick and had to stay in bed for over a week because of that. It was definitely a bike trip that I'll never forget.

**1. Dizzying** /'dɪziɪŋ/: quay cuồng, làm chóng mặt

*Ví dụ: The car drove past at a dizzying speed.*

**2. Thunder started to roar:** sấm chớp ùng ùng

**Thunder** /'θʌndər/: sấm

**Roar** /rɔːr/: gầm lên

**3. Flat tyre:** xì lốp xe

**Flat** /flæt/: phẳng, bẹp

**Tyre** /'taɪər/: lốp xe

*Ví dụ: We had to stop because of the flat tyre.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Why is cycling not popular in many places nowadays?

I think there are 2 main reasons: bikes are slow and more **physically demanding**<sup>(1)</sup> than vehicles like cars. You know, bikes can only travel at a maximum of about 20km/h, but most people now have to commute a long distance every day, so using bikes can be quite time-consuming. Besides, cycling requires quite a lot of physical strength, and not everyone can **endure**<sup>(2)</sup> 20 to 30 km of cycling every day. That's why people prefer cars or motorbikes.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Physically demanding**: đòi hỏi nhiều về mặt thể chất

**Physically** /'fɪzɪkli/: liên quan, thuộc về thể chất

**Demanding** /dɪ'mændɪŋ/: đòi hỏi nhiều

Ví dụ: *The work is physically demanding so he usually ends up being exhausted at the end of the day.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Endure** /ɪn'dʊr/: chịu đựng một điều gì đó.

Ví dụ: *The pain was almost too great to endure.*

### 2. Do you think it is possible for companies to require everyone to go to work by bike?

No, that'll never be possible, at least not in the next 10 or 20 years. Cycling is physically demanding, as I said, and not everyone lives near their workplace. If they are about 10 km away from their workplace, cycling all that way to work, plus congestion, the weather and something that may **come up**<sup>(3)</sup>, will just **drain all their energy**<sup>(4)</sup>. And this will affect their work performance in the end.

<sup>(3)</sup>**Come up**: xuất hiện một cách đột ngột.

Ví dụ: *I'm afraid something urgent has come up.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Drain one's energy**: rút cạn năng lượng.

**Drain** /drem/: rút cạn

**Energy** /'enədʒi/: năng lượng

Ví dụ: *Working from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m. has drained all of my energy.*

### 3. How do you think bicycles will change in the next 30 years?

I have no idea what bikes will be like in the future. The world is changing too rapidly and is too unpredictable. Maybe in the next 30 years we'll have flying bikes, bikes with missiles or whatever. Who knows what people can think of?

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you gave advice to others

You should say:

- When it was
- To whom you gave the advice
- What the advice was
- And explain why you gave the advice

### Answer

I'm going to tell you about a time that I gave my close friend a piece of advice about learning math. This happened over 10 years ago, when we were still in high school.

At that time, my friend was terrible at math: he couldn't understand or solve even the simplest math problem. As a result, his math score always remained under 6 on a **10-point scale**<sup>(1)</sup>. When the final exam was near, he turned to me for help, and I agreed to help him. However, because of his limited intelligence, he couldn't make any progress even though I provided him with **one-on-one tuition**<sup>(2)</sup> after class, and gave him instructions on homework. In a moment of desperation, I gave him some final advice: the only way he could make it through this is to cheat in the exam.

He took that advice seriously and worked on his vision every day. I was surprised to see that he really had a talent for this. In the exam, he cheated successfully and **passed with flying colours**<sup>(3)</sup>. Though I know cheating isn't good, sometimes we still need it to achieve our goal. And I was also happy because my advice could actually help someone.

**1. A 10-point scale:** thang điểm 10

**Scale** /skeɪl/: thang, quy mô

*Ví dụ: I got the highest score in the class, with a 9 on a 10-point scale.*

**2. One-on-one tuition:** kèm học 1-1

**Tuition** /tu'ɪʃn/: dạy kèm

*Ví dụ: Her parents paid a lot for her one-on-one tuition at home.*

**3. Passed with flying colours:** đậu bài thi với điểm số cao

*Ví dụ: I was so happy that I passed the entrance exam with flying colours*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. On what occasions do people need advice from others?

I think that people tend to seek advice in cases where they have some trouble or difficulties. You know, in case of trouble, people often look for help, and advice is a form of help. For example, when we encounter **financial difficulties**<sup>(1)</sup>, we tend to consult people with experience in this field, with the hope that their advice will get us out of the unpleasant situation.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Financial difficulties**: khó khăn về tài chính

**Financial** /fə'næŋʃl/: thuộc về tài chính

**Difficulty** /'dɪfɪkəlti/: khó khăn

Ví dụ: *They not only struggle with their health conditions but also with their financial difficulties.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Consult** /kən'sʌlt/: hỏi lời khuyên/ nhờ sự trợ giúp từ ai đó

Ví dụ: *If the pain continues, consult your doctor.*

### 2. Do you think we should believe in the advice of famous people?

It depends on the advice they give. You know, if famous people share something about what they're good at, then maybe we should listen, but not when it's about something irrelevant to their job. For example, if a singer advises people on how to sing well, that can be something to believe in. But if they tell you about how to fix an air conditioner, it's probably better not to take their advice.

### 3. Why do some people pay to get advice from others?

I think some people assume they can get good advice from an expert if they pay because, to them, everything comes with a price. For example, maybe they think that if we just ask someone for help without giving anything back, we won't get anything good in return.

# A toy

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a toy you liked in your childhood.

You should say:

- What kind of toy it is
- When you received it
- How you played it
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

I would like to talk about my Nintendo DS, which was one of my favorite childhood toys. If I'm not mistaken, I got this toy when I was a preteen. So, back then, my father made a promise that if I got a highscore on my math exam, he would buy me a new toy. Therefore, I tried my best and **passed the test with flying colors**<sup>(1)</sup>, so my father kept his promise and I was **over the moon**<sup>(2)</sup>.

At first, I thought that he would buy me a lego set or **an action figure**<sup>(3)</sup>. To my surprise, we went into a video game shop and bought a Nintendo DS, which was a small device to play video games.

Well, in terms of appearance, it looked like a smartphone but thicker, and it folds in half. I chose a grey coloured one so that my father and I could lie to my mom that it was an electronic dictionary that I needed to learn English.

There are many reasons why this toy made me so happy as a child. First, it had many **entertaining**<sup>(4)</sup> and enjoyable games such as Pokemon and Mario, so I could spend hours playing them and having a blast. I must say that it made my childhood so much better. Second, playing video games on the Nintendo DS helped me improve my **reflexes**<sup>(5)</sup> and imagination, so I could perform better at school. Finally, all the games are in English, so I had to use a dictionary to understand them. Even though it was a **white lie**<sup>(7)</sup> to my mom, I think that the Nintendo DS actually motivated me to learn English more.

Well, that's everything I want to say about this topic.

**1. Passed with flying colours:** đậu bài thi với điểm số cao

**2. Over the moon:** rất vui sướng  
*Ví dụ: I was over the moon when received the result saying that I passed the entrance exam with flying colours*

**3. Action figure:** đồ chơi hình nhân

**Action** /'ækʃn/: hành động

**Figure** /'fɪɡjər/: hình dáng

*Ví dụ: My brother is really interested in action figures so I gave them as a birthday gift on his birthday.*

**4. Entertaining** /,entər'teɪnɪŋ/: mang tính giải trí

*Ví dụ: She was always so funny and entertaining.*

**5. Reflex** /'ri:fleks/: hành động phản xạ

*Ví dụ: Almost as a reflex action, I grab my pen as the phone rings.*

**6. White lie:** lời nói dối vô hại

*Ví dụ: What's the harm in telling a little white lie?*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What's the difference between the toys kids play with now and those they played with in the past?

Modern toys are **drastically different**<sup>(1)</sup> from toys in the past. The biggest difference is that modern toys are made from plastic or other **synthetic**<sup>(2)</sup> materials, and are **manufactured**<sup>(3)</sup> on a large scale in a factory, which reduces their price. In comparison, in the past toys were made by hand using natural materials like wood or clay, and they required a lot of skill to make so toymakers were **artisans**<sup>(4)</sup> and **craftsmen**<sup>(5)</sup>. Take the classic doll, as an example, they used to be luxurious works of art that only the rich can afford, but nowadays anyone can buy a plastic doll in a mall.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Drastically different**: khác biệt rất nhiều

**Drastically** /'dræstɪkli/: đáng kể, đột ngột

**Different** /'dɪfrənt/: khác biệt

Ví dụ: *It's drastically different now than it was a year ago.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Synthetic** /sɪn'tetɪk/: (chất liệu) tổng hợp

Ví dụ: *Even the hair is synthetic.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Manufacture** /ˌmænjʊ'fæktʃər/: sản xuất

Ví dụ: *This company manufactures the equipment used to make contact lenses.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Artisan** /'ɑːrtəzn/: nghệ nhân

Ví dụ: *The hand-woven textiles were made by skilled local artisans.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**Craftsman** /'kræftsmən/: thợ thủ công

Ví dụ: *It is clearly the work of a master craftsman.*

### 2. Do you think parents should buy more toys for their kids or spend more time with them?

Parents should absolutely spend more quality time with their children because **parental care**<sup>(6)</sup> and **guidance**<sup>(7)</sup> are crucial to the healthy development of a child. For instance, playing and telling stories with kids can help them improve their verbal communication and **express their feelings**<sup>(8)</sup> better. However, toys can also be helpful in enhancing children's imagination and creativity since they can play with many colors and shapes.

<sup>(6)</sup>**Parental care**: sự quan tâm của cha mẹ

**Parental** /pə'rentl/: thuộc về cha mẹ

**Care** /ker/: sự quan tâm

Ví dụ: *The lack of parental care might do harm on children's mental health.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**Guidance** /'gaɪdnəs/: sự hướng dẫn

Ví dụ: *There should be a guidance for teachers on how to use video in the classroom*

<sup>(8)</sup>**Express one's feelings**: bày tỏ cảm xúc

**Express** /ɪk'spres/: bày tỏ

**Feeling** /'fiːlɪŋ/: cảm xúc

Ví dụ: *I'm not good at expressing my feelings, so not many people can understand me.*

### 3. Should advertisements aimed at children be banned?

Well, although these kinds of advertisements are **problematic**<sup>(9)</sup>, I don't think they should be banned. It's apparent that after children watch these advertisements, they tend to **insist on their parents buying**<sup>(10)</sup> those products. When it comes to unhealthy stuff like fast food and such things, it will do harm to their health. But I don't think banning those advertisements is a good idea because that would make a great number of people **redundant**<sup>(11)</sup>.

<sup>(9)</sup>**problematic** /ˌprɒːblə'mætɪk/: rắc rối, nhiều vấn đề

Ví dụ: *The situation is more problematic than we first thought.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**insist on someone doing something**: nằng nặc, nài nỉ ai làm gì

**insist** /ɪn'sɪst/

Ví dụ: *She insisted on him wearing a suit.*

<sup>(11)</sup>**redundant** /rɪ'dʌndənt/: thất nghiệp, mất việc

Ví dụ: *After the economic crisis, millions of people were made redundant.*

# An art exhibition

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe an art exhibition that you visited.

You should say:

- When you saw this exhibition
- Where the exhibition was held
- What was on display
- And explain your impression of the exhibition.

### Answer

I would like to talk about the Hanoi Photography Exhibition, which is one of my favorite art exhibitions. If I'm not mistaken, I took part in this event four months ago. So, back then, I went on a trip to Hanoi, the capital of Vietnam, and **came across**<sup>(7)</sup> a photography exhibition near Ho Guom walking street, so I decided to check it out.

At first, I thought that a photography exhibition would be lame and uninteresting. To my surprise, this event was a real **eye-opener**<sup>(1)</sup> about how a camera can create great **artwork**<sup>(2)</sup>.

Well, in terms of the venue, it was an outdoor event and the pictures were displayed alongside Guom lake, so anyone could freely come and take a look at them without buying a ticket. The exhibits fit the beautiful scenery of that area and attracted a lot of **pedestrians**<sup>(3)</sup>.

There are many reasons why I really liked this art exhibition. First, there were many beautiful photos that **depict**<sup>(4)</sup> life in different parts of the world. For example, there were photos of rural villages in Africa where people lived in **harsh**<sup>(5)</sup> conditions but still led happy lives. Second, the photographers used interesting **perspectives**<sup>(6)</sup> and techniques to create dramatic photos which expressed a clear message about love, equality and freedom. Finally, there were descriptions under each photo so I was able to learn about the meaning and context that the photographers want to show in their artwork.

Well, that's everything I want to say about this topic.

**1. Eye-opener** /'aɪ əʊəpənər/: một cái gì đó khiến mở mang tầm mắt

Ví dụ: *Travelling around India was a real eye-opener for me.*

**2. Artwork** /'ɑ:rtwɜ:rk/: tác phẩm nghệ thuật

Ví dụ: *Can you let me have the finished artwork for the poster by Friday?*

**3. Pedestrian** /pə'destriən/: người đi bộ (người đi đường)

Ví dụ: *Two pedestrians were injured when the car skidded.*

**4. Depict** /dɪ'pɪkt/: miêu tả

Ví dụ: *The novel depicts French society in the 1930s.*

**5. Harsh** /hɑ:ʃ/: khắc nghiệt

Ví dụ: *The punishment was harsh and unfair.*

**6. Perspective** /pə'r'spektɪv/: góc nhìn

Ví dụ: *A historical perspective may help us understand the issue.*

**7. Come across**: đi qua, bắt gặp

Ví dụ: *I came across children sleeping under bridges.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do people have different opinions about art?

I believe everyone has different **taste in art**<sup>(1)</sup> because beauty is entirely **subjective**<sup>(2)</sup>. For example, Picasso's paintings may look like a bunch of **meaningless**<sup>(3)</sup> shapes to some people, but they are also **priceless masterpieces**<sup>(4)</sup> to others. Therefore, I believe each person should form their own opinion about the value of artwork.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Taste in arts:** gu nghệ thuật

**Taste** /teɪst/: sở thích, gu

**Art** /ɑːrt/: nghệ thuật

Ví dụ: *No one can understand his taste of arts.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Subjective** /səb'dʒektɪv/: chủ quan

Ví dụ: *Everyone's opinion seems to be subjective.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Meaningless** /'miːnɪŋləs/: vô nghĩa

Ví dụ: *We fill up our lives with meaningless tasks.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Priceless masterpiece:** kiệt tác vô giá

**Priceless** /'praɪsləs/: vô giá

**Masterpiece** /'mæstərpiːs/: kiệt tác

Ví dụ: *Those paintings are priceless masterpieces. Being rich doesn't mean you can buy them.*

### 2. Why do some people like to collect expensive paintings?

Collecting valuable artwork is a way for **wealthy individuals**<sup>(5)</sup> to show their **social status**<sup>(6)</sup>. Since some paintings are **invaluable**<sup>(7)</sup> and cost millions of dollars, having them displayed in their **gallery**<sup>(8)</sup> can boost the **prestige**<sup>(9)</sup> and **reputation**<sup>(10)</sup> of the owner. For instance, imagine having famous paintings like the Mona Lisa in your living room, it would **gather more attention**<sup>(11)</sup> than the most expensive supercars. Still, I think that some rich people **genuinely**<sup>(12)</sup> enjoy art **for its own sake**<sup>(13)</sup>, not showing off.

<sup>(5)</sup>**Wealthy individuals:** những cá nhân giàu có

**Wealthy** /'welθi/: giàu có

**Individual** /ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl/: cá nhân

Ví dụ: *Famous singers and actors are considered to be wealthy individuals in my countries.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**Social status:** địa vị xã hội

**Social** /'səʊl/: thuộc về xã hội

**Status** /'steɪtəs/: tình trạng, địa vị

Ví dụ: *People are paying more attention to social status and wealth these days.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**Invaluable** /ɪnˈvæljuəbl/: rất có giá trị

Ví dụ: *The book will be invaluable for students in higher education.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**Gallery** /'gæləri/: triển lãm, bộ sưu tập

Ví dụ: *The painting is now on display at the National Gallery in London.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**Prestige** /preˈstiːʒ/: uy tín

Ví dụ: *There is a lot of prestige attached to owning a car like this.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**Reputation** /ˌrepjuˈteɪʃn/: danh tiếng

Ví dụ: *She soon established a reputation as a first-class cook.*

<sup>(11)</sup>**Gather more attention:** thu hút nhiều sự chú ý hơn

**Gather** /'gæðər/: tập hợp, thu thập

**Attention** /əˈtenʃn/: sự chú ý

Ví dụ: *She's doing anything she can to gather more attention from the public.*

<sup>(12)</sup>**Genuinely** /'dʒenjuɪnli/: thật sự

Ví dụ: *There are some genuinely funny moments in the film.*

<sup>(13)</sup> **For one's sake:** vì ai/cái gì

**Sake** /seɪk/

Ví dụ: *I won't tell him that story, for his sake.*

### 3. Are art exhibitions popular in your country?

To be honest, I have no idea because art has never been my interest. Frankly speaking, I have never visited an art gallery once in my life. But I guess art exhibitions do not really **gain in popularity**<sup>(14)</sup> in my country because none of my friends or **acquaintances**<sup>(15)</sup> have ever visited such places.

<sup>(14)</sup> **gain in popularity:** được yêu thích, ưa chuộng

**gain** /ɡeɪn/: giành được, đạt được

**popularity** /ˌpɒːpjʊˈlærəti/: sự yêu thích, sự ưa chuộng

Ví dụ: *Her novels have gained in popularity over recent years.*

<sup>(15)</sup> **acquaintance** /əˈkweɪntəns/: người quen

Ví dụ: *Claire has a wide circle of friends and acquaintances.*

# Wild animals

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you got close to wild animals.

You should say:

- Where you were
- What the animals were doing
- Who you were with
- And explain what your reaction was

### Answer

I would like to talk about a time when I got close to an elephant, which is one of the most important wild animals of my country. If I'm not mistaken, a few years ago I went on a school trip with my family to the city zoo. At that time, we went to the elephant **enclosure**<sup>(1)</sup> and I was excited to **see an elephant in the flesh**<sup>(2)</sup> since I had only seen them on TV before that time.

At first, I was under the impression that the elephant would look so cute and adorable. However, it turns out that the elephant was a **gigantic**<sup>(3)</sup> beast that **towered over**<sup>(4)</sup> everyone at my school, and it was much more **majestic**<sup>(5)</sup> than what I saw on TV.

Well, in terms of appearance, the elephant was a huge animal, I guess it must be 4 meters tall and weigh several tons. The most outstanding features of this animal were its trunk, which it can use to **manipulate**<sup>(6)</sup> objects or interact with the environment like drinking water and so on. It also has a giant pair of **tusks**<sup>(7)</sup>, which are made of white **ivory**<sup>(8)</sup> and it uses these tusks to defend itself. The elephant ears also take up a lot of space on its head, to me it looked like a huge pair of wings.

I really loved this encounter with the elephant for many reasons. First, we got to feed the elephant with sugar cane, and the elephant ate it with so much joy. Another reason is that they are so huge and have so much strength but also have a **gentle heart**<sup>(9)</sup> and rarely hurt anything, which are the qualities that I try to **emulate**<sup>(10)</sup> in my own life. Finally, the elephant plays an important role in the history of my country because many national heroes, like Nguyen Hue, rode elephants into battle and **crushed their enemies**<sup>(11)</sup>.

#### 9. Gentle heart: trái tim dịu dàng

**Gentle** /'dʒentl/: nhẹ nhàng

**Heart** /hɑ:rt/: trái tim

*Ví dụ: She's a nice woman with a gentle heart.*

1. **Enclosure** /ɪn'kləʊʒər/: khu nuôi nhốt, việc rào đất lại

*Ví dụ: There is a wildlife enclosure in the East of the area.*

2. **See someone/something in the flesh**: thấy ai đó/cái gì đó bằng xương bằng thịt

**Flesh** /fleʃ/: thịt

*Ví dụ: Thousands of fans gathered to see the band in the flesh.*

3. **Gigantic** /dʒə'gæntɪk/: khổng lồ  
*Ví dụ: The bomb caused a gigantic explosion.*

4. **Tower over**: to hơn

**Tower** /'tauər/

*Ví dụ: With that height, he towered over all of his classmates.*

5. **Majestic** /mə'dʒestɪk/: hùng vĩ

*Ví dụ: The Rockies are majestic in size.*

6. **Manipulate** /mə'nɪpjuleɪt/: điều khiển, thao túng

*Ví dụ: As a politician, he knows how to manipulate public opinion.*

7. **Tusk** /tʌsk/: ngà (voi)

*Ví dụ: Elephants are often hunted for their tusks.*

8. **Ivory** /'aɪvəri/: (chất) ngà

*Ví dụ: There should be a ban on the ivory trade.*

**10. Emulate** /'emjuleɪt/: làm theo, bắt chước

Ví dụ: *She hopes to emulate her sister's sporting achievements.*

**11. Crush the enemies:** đè bẹp kẻ thù

**Crush** /krʌʃ/: nghiền nát, đè bẹp

**Enemy** /'enəmi/: kẻ thù

Ví dụ: *Our ancestors fought really hard and crushed our enemies in the past to claim victory.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Are animals important to our life?

Without a doubt, animals **play a crucial role**<sup>(1)</sup> in our life. An important benefit of animals is that they provide us with food and without them it is hard for humans to get enough nutrition. For example, beef, pork and poultry provide an important **source of protein**<sup>(2)</sup> and other nutrients that cannot be **substituted**<sup>(3)</sup> with vegetables. However, the meat industry has many **unethical practices**<sup>(4)</sup> because animals are kept in horrible conditions and **slaughtered**<sup>(5)</sup> with **inhumane**<sup>(6)</sup> methods.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Play a crucial role:** đóng một vai trò quan trọng

**Crucial** /'kru:ʃl/: quan trọng

**Role** /rəʊl/: vai trò

Ví dụ: *Money plays a crucial role in our life.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Source of protein:** nguồn protein

**Source** /sɔ:rs/: nguồn

**Protein** /'prəʊti:n/

Ví dụ: *All kinds of meat provide a source of protein.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Substitute** /'sʌbstɪtu:t/: thay thế

Ví dụ: *Can you find someone to substitute for you at the meeting?*

<sup>(4)</sup>**Unethical practice:** hành vi vô đạo đức

**Unethical** /ʌn'eθɪkl/: vô đạo đức

**Practice** /'præktɪs/: hành động, việc làm

Ví dụ: *Killing animals for fur or leather is an unethical practice that needs to be stopped.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**Slaughter** /'slɔ:tər/: tàn sát

Ví dụ: *Men, women and children were slaughtered and villages destroyed.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**Inhumane** /ˌɪnhju:'mem/: vô nhân đạo

Ví dụ: *Conditions for prisoners were described as inhumane.*



## 2. Why do people keep pets?

I believe that people enjoy having a pet such as a cat or a dog because they provide us with good **company**<sup>(7)</sup>, they always **shower**<sup>(8)</sup> us with **affection**<sup>(9)</sup> if we treat them well. For instance, whenever I'm in a bad mood, my cat always sits on my lap and makes me feel warm inside so I no longer feel down. Still, I think that being a pet owner is a big responsibility and can cause you a lot of stress because you need to take care of them, feed them and take them to the **vet**<sup>(10)</sup> regularly.

<sup>(7)</sup>**Company** /'kʌmpəni/: sự bầu bạn, đi cùng  
Ví dụ: *The children are very good company at this age.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**Shower** /'ʃaʊər/: cho nhiều, tưới tấp, dồn dập  
Ví dụ: *The bride and groom were showered with rice as they left the church.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**Affection** /ə'fekʃn/: tình cảm, yêu thương  
Ví dụ: *Children need lots of love and affection.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**Vet** /vet/: thú y  
Ví dụ: *We had to take the dog to the local vet.*

## 3. How do people in your country feel about wild animals?

Well, I can't speak for all. Each person might have their own thoughts and feelings about animals. Some may feel scared or frightened when they get close to an animal, even when it is kept in the **cage**<sup>(11)</sup>. To be honest, I'm one of those people. Others, on the other hand, might feel a sense of excitement when they can see animals **in reality**<sup>(12)</sup>.

<sup>(11)</sup>**cage** /keɪdʒ/: chuồng  
Ví dụ: *I don't like seeing animals in cages.*

<sup>(12)</sup>**in reality** /ri'æləti/: trong thực tế  
Ví dụ: *The media portray her as happy and successful, but in reality she has a difficult life.*

# A problem with using a computer

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you had a problem with using a computer.

You should say:

- When it happened
- Where it happened
- Why the computer couldn't work
- And explain how you solved the problem at last

### Answer

I would like to talk about a time when my computer was **infected**<sup>(1)</sup> with a **malware**<sup>(2)</sup> program. If I'm not mistaken, this happened when I was in grade 9. At that time, I was trying to **pirate**<sup>(3)</sup> some video games on some **sketchy**<sup>(4)</sup> websites when suddenly my computer froze and shut down.

At first, I was under the impression that my computer had a hardware problem, so I restarted it. However, it turned out that my computer was affected by a malware program and there were many messages on the desktop telling me to download stuff to fix my computer.

I was a **tech-savvy**<sup>(5)</sup> kid at my age, so I didn't let that problem **faze**<sup>(6)</sup> me at all. I tried many things to get the computer to work. First, I tried to **uninstall**<sup>(7)</sup> the harmful software but it just crashed my computer if I tried to delete it. So, I tried to use the Antivirus software on my computer, and it detected many viruses and dangerous programs, and I tried to clean up my computer with the antivirus. Fortunately, it worked and I was able to remove the malware from my computer. Thanks to this incident, I learned a valuable lesson that I shouldn't download everything on the internet and I should be more careful when **browsing the web**<sup>(8)</sup>.

1. **infect** /ɪn'fekt/: làm lây nhiễm

Ví dụ: *It is not possible to infect another person through kissing.*

2. **malware** /'mælwer/: phần mềm độc hại

Ví dụ: *You need to take a course to know how to protect yourself against malware.*

3. **pirate** /'paɪrət/: xâm phạm tác quyền, xài lậu

Ví dụ: *Jones was accused of having pirated the scientist's work.*

4. **sketchy** /'sketʃi/: mờ ám, không trung thực

Ví dụ: *He was a man with a sketchy past.*

5. **tech-savvy** /,tek 'sævi/: hiểu biết, thích thú công nghệ

Ví dụ: *The bank needs to meet the demands of today's tech-savvy consumers.*

6. **faze** /feɪz/: làm bối rối, làm lúng túng

Ví dụ: *She wasn't fazed by his comments.*

7. **uninstall** /,ʌnɪn'stɔ:l/: gỡ bỏ (chương trình trên máy tính)

Ví dụ: *Let's uninstall any programs that you no longer need.*

8. **browse the web**: duyệt web

**browse** /braʊz/: lướt qua

Ví dụ: *I spent the whole evening just browsing webs on the internet.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Is it better to fix a computer yourself or take it to a repair shop?

I think this depends on the type of problems that your computer might have because fixing **minor problems**<sup>(1)</sup> can help people become more tech-savvy compared to relying on other people to repair it for them. For example, when my computer was infected with a virus, I looked up some online tutorials to install a new **operating system**<sup>(2)</sup>, which taught me many useful lessons about technology. However, **when it comes to**<sup>(3)</sup> serious **hardware**<sup>(4)</sup> issues, I think taking my computer to a professional is **inevitable**<sup>(5)</sup> because I don't have enough parts or skill to repair it myself.

<sup>(1)</sup>**minor problems**: vấn đề nhỏ

**minor** /'maɪnər/: nhỏ

**problem** /'prɑːbləm/: vấn đề

Ví dụ: *It's just a minor problem, don't worry!*

<sup>(2)</sup>**operating system** /'ɑːpəreɪtɪŋ sɪstəm/: hệ điều hành

Ví dụ: *Which operating system do you use?*

<sup>(3)</sup>**when it comes to**: khi nói đến

Ví dụ: *When it comes to success, each person has their own definition.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**hardware** /'hɑːrdweɪ/: phần cứng

Ví dụ: *They stock printers, keyboards, and other hardware.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**inevitable** /ɪn'evɪtəbl/: không thể tránh khỏi

Ví dụ: *It was an inevitable consequence of the decision.*

### 2. Are young people better with computers than old people?

Well I think that the **majority**<sup>(6)</sup> of young people are better with technology than old people since they have had more **exposure to**<sup>(7)</sup> technological devices. For example, my young brother can use a smartphone like it's a natural **instinct**<sup>(8)</sup>, but my grandfather **struggles**<sup>(9)</sup> to **figure out**<sup>(10)</sup> how to use Facebook despite my instruction. Still, I think that many senior citizens **know computers like the back of their hand**<sup>(11)</sup> since in their time computers were much more difficult to use, so they had to learn everything on their own.

<sup>(6)</sup>**majority** /mə'dʒɔːrəti/: đa số

Ví dụ: *The majority was in favour of banning smoking.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**be exposed to**: được tiếp xúc với

**exposed** /ɪk'spəʊzd/

Ví dụ: *Children are more likely to become aggressive if they are exposed to violent programmes.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**instinct** /'ɪnstɪŋkt/: bản năng

Ví dụ: *His first instinct was to run away.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**struggle** /'strʌɡl/: đấu tranh, chật vật

Ví dụ: *Shona struggled for breath.*

<sup>(10)</sup>**figure out**: tìm ra

**figure** /'fɪɡjər/

Ví dụ: *We've been working on the issue for days but haven't figured out the solution.*

<sup>(11)</sup>**know someone/something like the back of one's hand**: hiểu/biết ai/cái gì như lòng bàn tay  
Ví dụ: *This is where I grew up. I know this area like the back of my hand.*

### 3. Do you think computers make our life simpler or more complex?

Simpler, of course. With just a few **mouse clicks**<sup>(12)</sup>, any tasks can be done like mailing or shopping. In the past, it took people days or even weeks to travel from one place to another. But now, with the help of computers, all kinds of communication or interaction can be done **regardless of**<sup>(13)</sup> location. So I believe our life has become much easier thanks to technology and computers.

<sup>(12)</sup>**mouse click** /maʊs klɪk/: cú nhấp chuột

*Ví dụ: You can make friends with people from all over the world with a few mouse clicks.*

<sup>(13)</sup>**regardless of**: bất kể

**regardless** /rɪˈɡɑːdləs/

*Ví dụ: People can attend online courses regardless of age or background.*

# An article on health

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe an article on health you read in a magazine or on the internet

You should say:

- What it was
- Where you read it
- Why you read it
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

I'd like to share an article about **water fasting**<sup>(1)</sup> which I recently **came across**<sup>(2)</sup>. I assume this can be quite a new term to many people, but not to those who are interested in weight loss. Well, from what I've read, water fasting is a period when a person consumes nothing but water only, in order to lose weight and the maximum time to go without food is 3 days. This method is gaining popularity gradually in developed countries and is often regarded as a safe and natural health movement. I saw this article when I was searching for safe ways to go on a diet as, you know, a healthy body brings a healthy mind. The phrase 'water fasting' immediately **caught my attention**<sup>(3)</sup> since I've always known water is essential but never imagined that people could lose weight just by drinking it. It took me by surprise even more when I discovered we could go for 3 days just by drinking water. I reckon that this is a scientific way to lose weight quickly, but I have no intention in trying because I was looking for a long-term method. Regardless, I think water fasting can be helpful to those who want to **shake off**<sup>(4)</sup> some weight for an important date.

**1. water fasting** /'wɔ:tə 'fɑ:stɪŋ/ (n): giảm cân bằng nước lọc

*Ví dụ: When you follow water fasting method to lose weight, you cannot eat anything except water.*

**2. come across something/someone** /kʌm ə'krɒs 'sʌmθɪŋ/'sʌmwʌn / (phr.

v): bắt gặp ai đó hoặc cái gì đó

*Ví dụ: When she was cleaning her room, she came across her old diary.*

**3. catch someone's attention** /kætʃ 'sʌmwʌn ə'tenʃ(ə)n / (phr. v): dành được sự chú ý của ai đó

*Ví dụ: Her appearance will definitely catch the employer's attention.*

**4. shake off** /ʃeɪk ɒf / (phr. v): rũ bỏ

*Ví dụ: I tried to shake off my stress by listening to my favorite song, but it didn't work at all.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think people are healthier now than in the past?

Not quite. I agree that people now have more access to health-related news and can prevent themselves from unwanted health problems at an early age. However, at the same time, people also face more health risks due to industrial activities and modern lifestyle habits. In many parts of the world, people have to deal with severe air and water pollution, and this can **deteriorate**<sup>(1)</sup> their health significantly. Also, most young people nowadays **prioritize**<sup>(2)</sup> work over health and resort to fast food, which is very unhealthy.

<sup>(1)</sup>**deteriorate** /dɪ'tɪəri.ə.reɪt/ (v): làm xấu đi

Ví dụ: *Josh's grandmother condition suddenly deteriorated yesterday.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**prioritize** /praɪ'ɔːr.ə.taɪz/ (v): ưu tiên

Ví dụ: *Learning how to prioritize your work is essential if you want to improve your productivity.*

### 2. How can you tell whether a website is reliable or not?

I would probably base that on its popularity and the reputation of any associated institutions. Usually if a website is owned by any government or official agency, it usually ends with .com or .org. On the other hand, websites which have many **pop-up ads**<sup>(3)</sup> or are poorly designed are much less **credible**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**pop-up ads** /'pɒp.ʌp ædz/: quảng cáo xuất hiện ngẫu nhiên

Ví dụ: *Pop-up ads always make me feel annoyed.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**credible** /'kred.ə.bəl/ (adj): đáng tin cậy

Ví dụ: *There was no credible evidence which could prove that he was the thief.*

### 3. What activities can schools organize for children to keep fit?

From what I know, P.E is compulsory in the school curriculum in most places and this is one of the easiest and most effective ways to make children engage in physical activity. Schools should also promote sporting clubs as well as hosting regular sports competitions to encourage students to exercise. These activities should come with extra credits, so students can be more motivated.

### 4. What can governments do to improve people's health?

I haven't come up with any effective solution on a large scale. One thing the governments can do is to **impose**<sup>(5)</sup> higher taxes on unhealthy products like sweet drinks and fast food to reduce consumption. Hosting national sports competitions with monetary rewards could also give people more motivation to start exercising. But for the most part, people themselves have to be more conscious of the influence of their daily routine on their health if they want to achieve any improvements in their health.

<sup>(5)</sup>**impose** /ɪm'pəʊz/ (v): ban hành

Ví dụ: *It is necessary to impose high taxes on alcohol.*

# A famous person

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a famous person you are interested in

You should say:

- Who he/she is
- How you knew about him/her
- What he/she was like before he/she became famous
- And explain why you are interested in him/her

### Answer

Well, there is a celebrity that I've been dying to meet in person. Her name is Taylor Swift - a worldwide **renowned**<sup>(1)</sup> American artist. If I remember correctly, I got to know her when I was **browsing**<sup>(2)</sup> YouTube and came across one of her most well-known songs - Red. I was immediately hooked on the **catchy melody**<sup>(3)</sup> and **genuinely**<sup>(4)</sup> impressed by how gorgeous she looked in the music video. When I listened to it the second time, I **became obsessed with the song**<sup>(5)</sup> as I could totally **relate to the story**<sup>(6)</sup> she delivered in the lyrics. The more I get to know about her, the more I understand that she has such a **strong will**<sup>(7)</sup>. Taylor wasn't **born with a silver spoon in her mouth**<sup>(8)</sup>, so she had to work hard to achieve recognition from the music industry as they already have so much **prejudice**<sup>(9)</sup> against women doing music. Another **virtue**<sup>(10)</sup> that I've learned from Taylor is **humbleness**<sup>(11)</sup>. Even being a rank A pop star, she remains **down-to-earth**<sup>(12)</sup> and is always sincere to her fans. I believe that she uses her journey and musical works to inspire young women to become successful and independent and that's also why I've been a **die-hard fan**<sup>(13)</sup> of her.

1. **renowned** /rɪ'naʊnd/ (adj): nổi tiếng, có danh tiếng

Ví dụ: *My hometown is renowned for its breathtaking scenery.*

2. **browse** /braʊz/ (v): lên mạng

Ví dụ: *When I have free time, I keep browsing around the Internet.*

3. **catchy melody** /'kætʃi 'melədi/: giai điệu hấp dẫn

Ví dụ: *I love this song because of its catchy melody.*

4. **genuinely** /'dʒen.ju.ɪn.li/ (adv): chân thành

Ví dụ: *He genuinely apologized for his past mistake.*

5. **become obsessed with someone/something** / bɪ'kʌm əb'sest wið 'sʌmwʌn/'sʌmθɪŋ / (phr. v): bị ám ảnh bởi ai/cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *He has become obsessed with materialistics and reputation since he moved to the urban area.*

6. **relate someone to something** / rɪ'leɪt 'sʌmwʌn tu: 'sʌmθɪŋ/: liên hệ ai đó với một cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *I cannot relate myself to her situation as I've never experienced such thing.*

7. **strong will** /,strɔ:ŋ'wɪld/ (n): ý chí mạnh mẽ

Ví dụ: *She overcame all of the difficulties in her life with a strong will.*

8. **born with a silver spoon in someone mouth** /bɔ:n wið ə 'sɪlvə spu:n ɪn 'sʌmwʌn maʊθ/ (idiom): giàu có và thành công từ khi mới sinh ra.

Ví dụ: *Children who were born with a silver spoon in their mouth tend to lack of the ability to empathize with others.*

9. **prejudice** /'predʒ.ə.dɪs/ (n): định kiến

Ví dụ: *Instead of putting prejudice against homosexuals, people should accept them with an open view.*

10. **virtue** /'vɜ:ɪ.tʃu:/ (n): đức hạnh

Ví dụ: *There are a lot of virtues I can learn from him, such as patience and honesty.*

**11. humbleness** /'hʌm.bəl.nəs/ (n): khiêm tốn

Ví dụ: *His humbleness makes other people respect him.*

**12. down-to-earth** /ˌdaʊn.tuː'ɜːθ/ (adj): chân thành

Ví dụ: *The main reason which makes me like my teacher is the fact that he is always down-to-earth and honest with his students.*

**13. die-hard fan** /'daɪhɑːd fæn/ (n): fan cứng

Ví dụ: *I've been a die-hard fan for Taylor Swift for 10 years.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kinds of famous people are there in your country?

From the way I see it, in Vietnam, people who are considered popular are very diverse. They could be famous actors, singers, or comedians, you name it. In fact, celebrities nowadays are measured by their presence on social platforms like Facebook, Tiktok and so on, rather than whether they are talented or not. That's why I would say that famous people in Vietnam are varied

### 2. What are the differences between famous people today and those in the past?

Years ago, I believe that most celebrities gained their popularity through their hard work, talent, and skill. In other words, people in the past had to make a certain effort to achieve some kind of accomplishment, like being a renowned artist or something, whereas today, it's mostly based on social media presence and how well someone can draw attention, regardless of their skill or talent.

### 3. Do you think famous people are necessarily good in their field?

Perhaps not. I mean, a lot of people became famous solely because they are determined at what they do, not because they are exceptionally good at it. Many stars are acknowledged simply because they are distinct from others, for better or for worse. But I guess it also depends on the field they are working in. If they are sports stars, they have to excel as this is a highly competitive field.

### 4. Do you think the media are putting too much attention on famous people?

They do, but it's **justifiable**<sup>(1)</sup>. For some reason, the public seems to always care more about celebrities and their personal lives than other important issues. So, to generate money, media channels target famous people to attract more public attention, views, and discussion. Well, although I think celebrities are receiving too much unnecessary attention, it is what they **sign up for**<sup>(2)</sup> as being a **public figure**<sup>(3)</sup> also means being in the **spotlight**<sup>(4)</sup> all the time.

<sup>(1)</sup>**justifiable** /'dʒʌs.tə.fəɪ.ə.bəl/ (adj): chính đáng  
Ví dụ: *According to the council, his self-defense behavior was justifiable.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**sign up for** (phr. v): đại diện cho  
Ví dụ: *Hedi Klumn signs up for the golden era of Victoria Secret model.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**public figure** /ˌpʌb.lɪk 'fɪɡ.jər/ (n): người của công chúng

Ví dụ: *Her scandal proves that she cannot become a real public figure.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**spotlight** /'spɔːt.laɪt/ (n): tâm điểm, ánh hào quang

Ví dụ: *Behind the spotlight of a person is the difficulties they are facing.*



# A person

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe a person who you think wears unusual clothes

You should say:

- Who this person is
- How you knew this person
- What his/her clothes are like
- And explain why you think his/her clothes are unusual

### Answer

I am going to tell you about a celebrity that I find whose taste in fashion is pretty unique. He is Billy Porter, a well-known American actor in the LGBT community. To be honest, I have been a big fan of him since I was a high school student, so I literally follow him on all of his social media, such as Twitter and Instagram. Although he always shows up on TV programs and public events wearing **abnormal**<sup>(1)</sup> costumes, I believe that his outfits never **go out of style**<sup>(2)</sup>. Other than that, this man is extremely brilliant when he uses his clothes to make a fashion statement. Unlike others, plain and **sober**<sup>(3)</sup> colors don't exist in his closet. Porter mostly wears only vibrant and **fluorescent**<sup>(4)</sup> colors like orange and red. One time, at the 2019 Golden Globes events, Porter **gained a great amount of attention**<sup>(5)</sup> from the media for wearing an **embroidered**<sup>(6)</sup> suit and pink **cape**<sup>(7)</sup>. His intention wasn't to seek **fame**<sup>(8)</sup> but to challenge the **social norm**<sup>(9)</sup> on **masculinity**<sup>(10)</sup> since he believes that regardless of our gender, we are free to choose how we want to present ourselves to the public. No doubt that other people may consider his style weird and a bit **outrageous**<sup>(11)</sup>, I just appreciate it and hope that people can have a more open mind toward fashion in the future. I wish I could have his confidence to state my personality through what I put on.

1. **abnormal** /æb'nɔːr.məl/ (adj): bất thường

Ví dụ: *His abnormal heartbeat can be the signal for a stroke.*

2. **go out of style** /gəʊ aʊt ɒv stail/ (idiom): ăn mặc lỗi mốt

Ví dụ: *Those pairs of jeans never go out of style.*

3. **sober** /'səʊ.bə/ (adj): màu nhã nhặn

Ví dụ: *Her closet covers with vibrant colors, without any sober clothing.*

4. **fluorescent** /flɔː'res.ənt/ (adj): có màu huỳnh quang

Ví dụ: *John's newest collection has inspiration from fluorescent colors.*

5. **gain a great amount of attention** (phrase): nhận được lượng lớn sự chú ý

Ví dụ: *Last night's incident gain a great amount of attention from the public.*

6. **embroidered** /ɪm'brɔɪ.də/ (v): thêu  
Ví dụ: *In the past, the aristocracy was very fond of hand-embroidered clothes.*

7. **cape** /keɪp/ (n): áo choàng

Ví dụ: *Superheroes in comic books usually use capes as a part of their main costume.*

8. **fame** /feɪm/ (n) danh vọng

Ví dụ: *Some people only come to the city to seek for fortune and fame.*

9. **social norm** /'səʊʃəl nɔːm / (n): chuẩn mực xã hội

Ví dụ: *Social norms are shared standards of acceptable behavior by the society.*

10. **masculinity** /ˌmæ.skjə'lm.a.ti/ (n): nam tính

Ví dụ: *Toxic masculinity is the main reason for male violence and sexism.*

11. **outrageous** /ˌaʊt'reɪ.dʒəs/ (adj): thái quá

Ví dụ: *The prices of these handbags are just outrageous.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think what people wear can influence their mood?

It surely can. I do recall reading from an article that our mood, attitude, and confidence level can be affected depending on what we choose to put on. For example, dressing in black clothes can easily generate negative energy, while dressing in bright and life-giving colors such as yellow and orange can boost one's overall energy and the people around them. Nevertheless, it also depends on their preference. If people get to wear what **flatters**<sup>(1)</sup> their figure or what they like, that could raise their self-confidence significantly.

<sup>(1)</sup>**flatter** /'flæt.ə/ (v): tăng bốc một người nào đó

Ví dụ: *This dress flatters her body shape.*

### 2. Do you think it is a good idea to buy clothes online?

I mean, why not. Generally, shopping online is far more convenient than shopping at most conventional **retail stores**<sup>(2)</sup>, where you need to do all the travel to get what you want. Not to mention, we can compare the prices easily beforehand when shopping online. Besides, more and more online shopping platforms nowadays are offering great discounts, safe payment processes and **lightning-fast delivery**<sup>(3)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**retail store** /'ri:teɪl stɔ:/ (n): cửa hàng bán lẻ

Ví dụ: *Most of the products you buy in a retail store have a higher price than those sell online.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**lightning-fast delivery** /'laɪtnɪŋ-fɑ:st dɪ'lɪvəri/: giao hàng cực nhanh

Ví dụ: *I appreciate the lightning-fast delivery of this shipping service.*

### 3. What kind of clothes do people wear in the workplace?

In the past, workplace **dress codes**<sup>(4)</sup> were always a matter of great concern because most would just wear **formal clothing**<sup>(5)</sup> in black and white, which is kind of boring. However, in recent years, the fashion culture in the working environment, as I believe, has gone through a lot of changes. For example, employees are not required to dress in office clothes such as suits and shirts anymore, but I am pretty sure that there is always an **implicit rule**<sup>(6)</sup> in which they must always look **well-groomed**<sup>(7)</sup>. People nowadays are way more into fashion than in the past, so, understandably, dress codes in the workplace are no longer so strict.

<sup>(4)</sup>**dress code** /dres kəʊd/: quy định về trang phục

Ví dụ: *In my company, employees don't have to follow any certain dress code.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**formal clothing** /'fɔ:məl 'kləʊðɪŋ/: quần áo trang trọng

Ví dụ: *It is compulsory to wear formal clothing in a funeral.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**implicit rule** /ɪm'plɪsɪt ru:l/: quy tắc ngầm

Ví dụ: *In a conversation, it is normal for people to use implicit communication rules like the use of facial expressions and body language.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**well-groomed** /,wel 'gru:md/ (adj): chải chu

Ví dụ: *The ladies tend to fall for well-groomed men.*

#### 4. What are the differences between clothes worn by old people and those by young people?

Let's start with dressing styles. Compared to young people, who are likely to stay up to date with the latest trends and are ready to experience wearing all types of clothing, the elderly are more familiar with traditional clothes, something casual and won't cause any inconvenience. Especially in Vietnam, it's not hard to spot the difference in the dressing style of young and old people. The elderly will only dress up a little bit when there are special occasions but still in a very reserved and **discreet**<sup>(8)</sup> manner. Meanwhile, young people are eager to make a fashion statement.

<sup>(8)</sup>**discreet** /dɪ'skri:t/ (n): kín đáo

Ví dụ: *She knocked on the door discreetly because she was afraid that the baby might wake up.*

## Something important

### IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe something important that has been kept in your family for a long time

You should say:

- What it is
- When your family had it
- How your family got it
- And explain why it is important to your family

#### Answer

There are many things that have been **passed down**<sup>(1)</sup> in my family, and my grandfather's self-written book is probably the one that I **cherish**<sup>(2)</sup> the most. This book has been around dozens of years before I was born, so it is valuable to our family without a doubt. To the best of my recollection, my grandfather wrote this book when he was in the military. He served the country for more than 3 years, and during his time in the force, he wrote down his feelings, experiences, and many hidden stories that weren't told in any history books. I remembered him telling me that after Vietnam regained independence, his diary was one of his most priceless **assets**<sup>(3)</sup>, so he decided to properly rewrite his diary into a book of his own. He managed **to get in touch with his friend**<sup>(4)</sup> who worked in publication and had the book published, but in very small numbers. The original copy of the book, which my grandfather wrote by hand himself, has been well-preserved in our living room for more than 40 years now. I **take pride in my family**<sup>(5)</sup> every time I look at it, because the book itself states how much my grandfather has contributed to the country so we can all live in peace right now.

**1. pass down** / pɑ:s daʊn / (phr. v): truyền lại cho thế hệ sau

Ví dụ: *I will never pass down my legacy to anyone not in my family.*

**2. cherish** /'tʃer.ɪʃ/ (v): trân trọng

Ví dụ: *Parents should cherish their children by letting them have their own independence.*

**3. assert** /-'sɜ:t/ (v): khẳng định

Ví dụ: *She officially asserts on TV that all rumors about her are wrong.*

**4. to get in touch with someone** / tu: get ɪn tʌtʃ wɪð 'sʌmwʌn/: liên lạc với

Ví dụ: *You can get in touch with the students' council by their hotline.*

**5. take pride in something** /sɒmbɒdi/ teɪk praɪd ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ/'sʌmbədi/: tự hào về ai đó hoặc cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *You are a doctor so you should take more pride in your work.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What things do families keep for a long time?

Probably rare and expensive porcelain items. They are usually high in value, so they are passed down from generation to generation as a statement for the wealthiness of the family. Besides, **sentimental**<sup>(1)</sup> items are also kept for quite a long time to remind family members of the **ups and downs**<sup>(2)</sup> and how important family traditions are.

<sup>(1)</sup>**sentimental** /ˌsen.təˈmen.təl/ (adj): đa cảm

Ví dụ: *She kept the letters for sentimental reasons.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**ups and downs** /ˌʌps ən ˈdaʊnz/ (n): những thăng trầm trong cuộc sống

Ví dụ: *We have been best friends for nearly 10 years, and have been through many ups and downs together.*

### 2. What's the difference between things valued by people in the past and today?

I don't see much difference, to be honest. As I have mentioned, things with **monetary**<sup>(3)</sup> or sentimental value are kept carefully and passed down to the later generation. I guess the only difference is people's attitudes towards these items. From what I see, young people often **take these items for granted**<sup>(4)</sup> unless they can profit from them.

<sup>(3)</sup>**monetary** /ˈmʌn.ə.tri/ (adj): thuộc về tiền tệ

Ví dụ: *The monetary unit of the USA is the dollar.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**take something for granted** / teɪk ˈsʌmθɪŋ fɔː ˈgrɑːntɪd / (idiom): không biết quý trọng, xem nhẹ một cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *Alice was a good friend but none of her friends took her for granted.*

### 3. What kinds of things are kept in museums?

It varies. They can be personal items of past emperors like their clothes, basic necessities or decorations like paintings. Moreover, there are also **remnants**<sup>(5)</sup> of war like weapons, bombs, and historical documents. Basically, any items that belong to any historical event are preserved carefully in museums for research and exhibition purposes.

<sup>(5)</sup>**remnant** /ˈrem.nənt/ (n): tàn tích

Ví dụ: *Kukulcan pyramid is the only remnants of the Maya's former civilization.*

### 4. What's the influence of technology on museums?

Advanced technology has certainly brought positive changes to museum exhibitions. Many places have enabled viewing displays in museums in 3D through online platforms, which is quite a fascinating experience for young people. Audio descriptions have also been **integrated**<sup>(6)</sup> in many museums to enhance visitors' experience. All I can say is that technology truly brings places like museums closer to the public.

<sup>(6)</sup>**integrated** /ˈɪn.tə.ɡreɪ.tɪd/ (adj): tích hợp

Ví dụ: *Many private integrated school systems have been established in the recent years.*

# A thing that you bought

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a thing that you bought and felt pleased about

You should say:

- What you bought
- Where you bought it
- What it was for
- And explain why you felt pleased about it

### Answer

I'm going to tell you about my recent purchase when I was in **quarantine**<sup>(1)</sup>. It was on my birthday that I decided to buy a brand-new cleaning robot as a treat for myself. I was extremely pleased when I received it just one week after I **placed the order**<sup>(2)</sup>. This robot is an automatic mopping and vacuuming gadget from a quite popular home electronics brand in Vietnam - Xiaomi. Even though I bought it at a very affordable price through a **clearance sale**<sup>(3)</sup> on Lazada, this bot has done an amazing job. It is thinner than most robots, which is a huge advantage since the size allows it to glide under more furniture and to pick up plenty of hidden **debris**<sup>(4)</sup>. The most significant feature of this robot is it learns my home's layout in one cleaning session, after which I can send it to clean specific rooms while avoiding any no-go zones I've set up. It's all done through an interactive map in a smartphone app called Mi-home. This means I can control and adjust its cleaning schedule without actually touching the robot. My mother also fell in love with this small machine because of its convenience. Now, she doesn't need to clean my room nor her room, all she does now is connecting the bot with our home's Wi-Fi, and the bot will do the rest **in the blink of an eye**<sup>(5)</sup>.

**1. quarantine** /'kwɔːrən.tiːn/ (n): thời gian cách ly

*Ví dụ: During the COVID-19 pandemic, all Vietnamese people have to stay in quarantine for at least fourteen days.*

**2. place an order** /pleɪs ən 'ɔːdə/: đặt hàng

*Ví dụ: Yesterday, I placed an order for a new pair of shoes on Shopee.*

**3. clearance sale** /'klɪərəns seɪl/ (n): buổi bán hàng tồn kho

*Ví dụ: Every year, all of the flagship stores in my country launch clearance sale at the end of the year.*

**4. debris** /də'brɪː/ (n): mảnh vỡ

*Ví dụ: Everything was covered by dust and debris after the storm.*

**5. in the blink of an eye** /ɪn ðə blɪŋk ɒv ən aɪ/ (idiom): trong chớp mắt

*Ví dụ: I can not get used to the working environment here, everything changes in the blink of an eye.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. How often do people in your country go shopping?

I can't speak for everyone but probably every week. Households usually go **grocery shopping**<sup>(1)</sup> on the weekends and stock food for the entire week. Also, young people would shop for clothes on a more regular basis, depending on their financial situation. But all in all, they would just go whenever they have free time, like a hobby.

<sup>(1)</sup>**grocery shopping** /'grəʊsəri 'ʃɒpɪŋ/: mua sắm những vật dụng cần thiết

*Ví dụ: In my family, my father is the one who is in charge of grocery shopping.*

### 2. Why is online shopping popular?

Mostly because shopping online is far more convenient than shopping at conventional retail stores, where you need to do all the travel to get what you want. Not to mention, we can compare the prices easily beforehand. Besides, more and more online shopping platforms nowadays are offering great discounts, safe payment processes and lightning-fast delivery.

### 3. How should sellers set prices for their products?

I think it must be based on two factors which are the average price of the products and the living standard of the area where they sell the product. What's more, sellers should also consider their revenue target and their branding to set the final price for whatever they are selling.

### 4. Do you think online shopping will replace shopping in stores?

It is possible, but I don't think it will. There are many **in-store experiences**<sup>(2)</sup> that cannot be replaced by online shopping, like trying on clothes or having personal support from salespersons. Despite the convenience of shopping online, adults and most elderly would always prefer shopping in person because they want to make sure they get exactly what they want.

<sup>(2)</sup>**in-store experience** /ɪn-stɔːr ɪks'piəriəns/: trải nghiệm mua sắm tại cửa hàng

*Ví dụ: Although I miss the in-store experience, shopping online is much more convenient.*

# A kind of weather

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe a kind of weather you like

You should say:

- What it is
- Where you go in this weather
- What you do in this weather
- And explain why you like it

### Answer

When it comes to my favorite weather, I will answer without a doubt that it is cloudy. There are a bunch of reasons why this type of weather is my favorite. As we all know, Ho Chi Minh city only has two kinds of weather: hot and dry, or rainy. I never feel at ease with the bright sunlight and the **scorching heat**<sup>(1)</sup> in the dry months. The rainy period annoys me even more as it creates a lot of difficulty getting around using a motorbike during a **downpour**<sup>(2)</sup>. As a result, I feel like a nice cloudy day would be best for me to **get away from a city**<sup>(3)</sup> that **boils with heat**<sup>(4)</sup> all year round and not have to suffer from sudden downpours of rain. Also, it may sound odd, but I kind of enjoy seeing everything become so **gloomy**<sup>(5)</sup> and mystical when all of the **man-made construction**<sup>(6)</sup> is covered with the transparency of clouds. Finally, cloudy weather **lifts my mood**<sup>(7)</sup> considerably, and I'm usually more **productive**<sup>(8)</sup> on such days. Unfortunately, a cloudy day cannot last long, and in fact, it is actually kind of rare in my city. That's why I have to travel once in a while to coastal cities where the weather is much better.

**1. scorching heat** /'skɔ:tʃɪŋ hi:t/: nóng như thiêu đốt

Ví dụ: *To getaway from the scorching heat in the city, my family decide to go to the beach in the summer.*

**2. downpour** /'daʊn.pɔ:r/ (n): mưa lớn  
Ví dụ: *The weather forecast predict that there will be downpour in the next 3 days.*

**3. get away from something** / get ə'wei frɒm 'sʌmθɪŋ/: thoát khỏi cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *The only way for you to relieve your stress is to get away from your work.*

**4. boil with heat** / bɔɪl wið hi:t/: nóng như sôi

Ví dụ: *I can't stand hot weather, so I normally don't opt for places which boil with heat to travel to.*

**5. gloomy** /'glu:mi/ (adj): âm đạm

Ví dụ: *Since she had a talk with his husband, she looks so gloomy.*

### 6. man-made construction

/ 'mæn'meɪd kən'strʌkʃən/: công trình do người xây dựng

Ví dụ: *The man-made constructions have overshadowed the beauty landscape of the city.*

**7. lift someone's mood** / lift'sʌm.wʌnz mu:d/: cải thiện tâm trạng của một ai đó

Ví dụ: *I tried to lift her mood by a cake but it didn't work.*

**8. productive** / prə'dʌktɪv / (adj): năng suất

Ví dụ: *It is such a challenge to stay productive on rainy days.*

# IELTS Speaking Part 3

## 1. What do people wear in different weather?

Depending on each region and country, dressing styles will also have certain changes. But when it comes to the weather, it is easy to see that there is always a similarity in the choice of clothes. Basically, people will always choose to wear **woolen**<sup>(1)</sup> clothes in winter because they protect us from the cold and cotton clothes in summer because they are cool and **absorbent**<sup>(2)</sup>. Well, each season will offer a variety of clothing options, the majority of which, I believe, will be focused on the fabric.

<sup>(1)</sup>**woolen** /'wʊlən/ (adj): làm bằng len

Ví dụ: *This woolen scarf is my 10th birthday's present.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**absorbent** /əb'sɔ:bənt / (adj): thấm hút, hấp thụ

Ví dụ: *Please use absorbent paper towels to take out the leftover oil in the french fries.*

## 2. How does weather influence people's lives?

Well, it affects us humans more considerably than we probably assume. I mean, there's really no end to the ways in which weather affects our lives. But to look at the lives of people on a daily basis, then I think it largely determines the clothes we wear, the foods we eat, the modes of transportation we use, and sometimes it's just how we feel. For example, I find that gloomy weather really makes many people feel more **sentimental**<sup>(3)</sup> and makes it harder to focus.

<sup>(3)</sup>**sentimental** /,senti'mentl/ (adj): đa cảm

Ví dụ: *This cheap necklace has great sentimental value for me.*

## 3. What are people's opinions on weather forecasts?

There are plenty but I'm quite sure that everyone would agree that weather forecasts are an important part of planning our day-to-day activities. They just help us to be ready for what things to do, what clothes to wear and which transportation to use the next day, and even sometimes, helps to keep us from possible danger. Monitoring real-time weather conditions like temperature, **precipitation**<sup>(4)</sup> and **humidity**<sup>(5)</sup> is also the ideal way for farmers to protect their crops and secure a high and healthy **yield**<sup>(6)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**precipitation** /prɪ,sɪpɪ'teɪʃən / (n): sự ngưng tụ, lượng mưa

Ví dụ: *Precipitation is any liquid or frozen water that forms in the atmosphere and falls back to the Earth.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**humidity** /hju(:)'mɪdɪti / (n): độ ẩm

Ví dụ: *Avocado needs heat and humidity to grow well.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**yield** /ji:ld/ (n): sản phẩm

Ví dụ: *The mango tree yields plenty of mango this year.*

## 4. Are there any festivals about seasons?

Yes, absolutely. Take Vietnam as an example; we have Tet holiday in which thousands of Vietnamese come together to **commemorate**<sup>(7)</sup> the beginning of each year. The famous cherry blossoms festival from late March to mid-April in Japan is also one of the examples. To be honest, I always believe that festivals, as well as seasons, are somehow interconnected.

<sup>(7)</sup>**commemorate** /kə'meməreɪt / (v): kỷ niệm

Ví dụ: *We commemorated the independence of our nation with a praise last year.*



# A live sport match

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a live sport match that you have watched

You should say:

- What it was
- When you watched it
- What it was like
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

To be honest, I am not a sporty person, so it is pretty rare for me to watch an entire sports game. Having said that, I had an opportunity to see my brother's school football match two years ago. If I recall correctly, that was the **semi-final round**<sup>(1)</sup> held between the **freshman**<sup>(2)</sup> and the **junior**<sup>(3)</sup> of my high school. The game began with many thrills as the first-year team **took the lead**<sup>(4)</sup> by kicking a goal at the very beginning. After a few minutes, the third-year team brought the game back to balance with a **superb header**<sup>(5)</sup>. All of the audience there were cheering for both teams, and despite not being a **hardcore football fan**<sup>(6)</sup>, I was screaming very loudly. In the second half of the match, the first-year's **defender**<sup>(7)</sup> had successfully defended a shot on goal. Unfortunately, though, in the last minute of extra time, the junior team took advantage of a penalty and made the score 2-1. I did have **a whale of a time**<sup>(8)</sup> thanks to the players' enthusiasm as they displayed their talent and passion. I had second thoughts about football after watching that match. I would like to enjoy another football match if I have the chance.

1. **semi-final round** /'semi-'faɪnl raʊnd/(n): vòng bán kết

Ví dụ: *This is the first time that my school has a chance to play in the final round.*

2. **freshman** /'freʃmən/ (n): học sinh năm nhất

Ví dụ: *Lisa just finished her freshman year in college.*

3. **junior** /'dʒuːnjə/(n): học sinh năm ba

Ví dụ: *This job is only suitable for the junior.*

4. **take the lead** / teɪk ðə liːd/: dẫn đầu

Ví dụ: *You know the way so please take the lead and we will follow right behind you.*

5. **superb header** /sju(:)'pɜːb 'hedə/: đánh đầu

Ví dụ: *His wonderful superb header helped his team to win the game.*

6. **hardcore football fan** 'hɑːd,kəː 'fʊtbɔːl fæn: fan hâm mộ bóng đá cuồng nhiệt

Ví dụ: *My brother is a hardcore football fan; he rarely misses a game of his favorite football's team.*

7. **defender** / dɪ'fendə/ (n): hậu vệ

Ví dụ: *The Spanish team attack puts the Japan's defenders under pressure.*

8. **a whale of time** / ə weɪl ɒv taɪm/: thời gian vui vẻ

Ví dụ: *Honestly, I've had a whale of time when talking with you.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you prefer to watch live sports or watch it on TV?

Watching live sports, without a doubt. Live games always have so much more to offer. You get the full picture of what's going on and the liveliest reactions from the biggest crowds in the stadiums. However, you know, it all comes down to one's personal preference. Some people would find it more comfortable to watch at home, and also it costs them almost nothing.

### 2. Why do some people like to watch live sports?

First of all, as a sports fan, I think there's really no better way to watch a game than directly watching it at a stadium, vibing with other sports lovers: the atmosphere, the overall enthusiasm and excitement of the crowds. However, you know, some people would find it more comfortable to watch at home, and also it costs them almost nothing.

### 3. What kinds of sports do Vietnamese people like to watch?

Like most parts of the world, football is no doubt the king of sport in Vietnam. No matter the gender, age, or personality, most Vietnamese have this long and deep passion for watching football. In recent years, Vietnam's national club has been struggling to develop a **thriving**<sup>(1)</sup> football culture, and certain success has been achieved. That's to say, our love and support for this kind of sport has **immensely**<sup>(2)</sup> increased as well.

<sup>(1)</sup>**thriving** /'θraɪvɪŋ/ (adj): phát triển mạnh

Ví dụ: *I don't think that your business can be thriving with that amount of money.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**immensely** /ɪ'mensli/ (adv): vô cùng

Ví dụ: *I found it immensely rewarding working as a teacher.*

### 4. Do you think competition is good for students?

As a student, I understand very well the impact of competitive spirit. In some cases, being competitive means that students are constantly striving **to keep up with their peers**<sup>(3)</sup>. This, however, has both positive and negative aspects. Often, all this competition can make students feel excessive jealousy, leading to negative behavior. Moreover, serious stress and depression can also be caused by having a competitive attitude.

<sup>(3)</sup>**to keep up with someone or something** /tu: ki:p ʌp wið 'sʌmwʌn ɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ/:

bắt kịp với ai đó hoặc việc nào đó

Ví dụ: *You have no other choice but to keep up with the fast-paced development.*

# An interesting conversation

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe an interesting conversation

You should say:

- Who you spoke with
- Where you were
- What the conversation was about
- And explain why you think it was interesting

### Answer

I have to admit that I'm not much of a social person – I am quite reserved, so most of the time I tend to avoid talking to strangers. But I do remember a time when I had to talk to a stranger on my very first trip to Taiwan 3 years ago. The conversation didn't last long but it left such a deep impression on me. When I was exploring Taiwan night market, I couldn't find the way to the popular boba tea shop HI Tea, a local place that sells hundreds of cups of milk tea every day due to its unique flavor. All the signs were in Taiwanese so I couldn't understand any of it, not even a single word. Not to mention, there were so many alleyways that it was impossible to locate myself on Google Maps. I finally decided to talk to a local nearby as a last resort. Well, I asked a young female, who was selling banana pancakes, the name of the street where I was standing in English. Luckily enough, she knew just enough to communicate with me. She kindly showed me the way to the tea shop, which was just at the end of the road. After that, I had a chat with her and found out that she was actually Vietnamese. We both **burst into laughter**<sup>(1)</sup> and ended up talking in Vietnamese instead. As the conversation went on, she shared that she left our country 10 years ago to get married in Taiwan and she had never regretted her decision even though she was homesick once in a while. She invited me to go to a cafe with her the next day, but I was already **occupied**<sup>(2)</sup> so I **turned her down**<sup>(3)</sup> and said goodbye. It was such a lovely experience, meeting someone who could speak my mother tongue with me in an unexpected situation.

**1. burst into laughter** / bɜːst 'ɪntuː  
'lɑːftə/: cười phá lên

*Ví dụ: They burst into laughter at the sight of her Halloween costume.*

**2. occupied** /'ɑːkjupaɪd/ (adj): bận rộn  
*Ví dụ: I will be occupied by a conference for the whole tomorrow's afternoon.*

**3. turn someone down** / tɜːn 'sʌmwʌn  
daʊn / (phr.v): từ chối ai đó  
*Ví dụ: I don't want to turn you down, but I've already had a girlfriend.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do people communicate more when they talk face to face?

I believe yes. People can **make eye contact**<sup>(1)</sup> when chatting in real life, which is a stimulator to keep the conversation going. Not to mention, it's easier to spot any **underlying**<sup>(2)</sup> messages through body language when talking in person, giving us a hint of whether to carry on with the topic discussed or not.

<sup>(1)</sup>**make eye contact** / meɪk aɪ 'kɒntækt/: giao tiếp bằng mắt

Ví dụ: *In the IELTS speaking exam, you don't have to make eye contact with the examiner.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**underlying** /ˌʌndə'laɪɪŋ/ (adj): tiềm ẩn

Ví dụ: *The underlying message of the novel is that you only live once so enjoy your life while you are still young.*

### 2. What do young people have conversations about?

From what I see, most men would chat about sports or cars or business-related topics. In comparison, women like me are more into fashion and current trends. But I believe that the issues young people talk about nowadays are much more varied compared to the past because they are more **exposed to**<sup>(3)</sup> the internet, so there is much more to discuss, from politics to entertainment.

<sup>(3)</sup>**exposed to** /ɪk'spəʊz/: tiếp xúc với

Ví dụ: *If you let the film exposed to the sunlight, it will be damaged.*

### 3. Do people have conversations more or less than they did in the past ?

I would say less. Most people are too occupied with their work and have little time for small talk or conversation in person. However, social media enables people to chat and stay connected 24/7, meaning communication in this day and age is more accessible than ever. Yet, this also means there are fewer actual conversations because there are many distractions when chatting online.

### 4. Do you think we need to be good at communication at work?

Without a doubt. It's fair to say that communication is key to success. Being able to exchange information effectively and carry on with a conversation surely gives one the advantage to **thrive**<sup>(4)</sup> both at work and in real life. I always believe that the core value of any success is the ability to connect people so being **competent**<sup>(5)</sup> at communication is a must.

<sup>(4)</sup>**thrive** /θraɪv/ (v): phát triển

Ví dụ: *After the war, his business couldn't thrive like it used to be.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**competent** /'kɒ:m.pə.tənt/ (adj): có năng lực, có tài năng

Ví dụ: *I have to admit that Gordon Ramsay is a competent chef.*

# A short trip

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

**Describe a short trip you often take but do not like**

You should say:

- Where you go
- When you go there
- Why you go there
- And explain why you do not like the trip

### Answer

As we all know that Tet is the most important holiday in Vietnam when every family gathers and cherishes the new year. So as a typical Vietnamese, my family annually takes a short vacation for about 3 days to my mother's hometown. My mother's **maternal home**<sup>(1)</sup> is located in Quang Ngai city, a **coastal city**<sup>(2)</sup> in southern central Vietnam. It usually takes my family more than 10 hours of travelling by car and less than 2 hours by plane, but we usually drive there ourselves to enjoy the view on the road. Although I love my grandparents and always look forward to meeting them, I just can't stand the countryside atmosphere and lifestyle. Our grandparents are the type of people who prefer to stay away from modern life. They wake up at 7.00 am and go to bed at around 9 pm, which is completely different from my daily routine. In addition, they force my siblings and me to do all of the household chores such as feeding the chickens and ducks and watering the garden. Even though I know their intention is to train me into a diligent and hard-working person, I just can't get used to it by any means. Regardless, I find comfort in talking with my grandfather because he is always giving me wise advice.

**1. maternal home** / mə'tɜːnl həʊm/:  
quê mẹ đẻ

*Ví dụ: Although I'm currently living in Ho Chi Minh city, my maternal home located in Nha Trang city.*

**2. coastal city** /'kəʊstəl 'sɪti / (n):  
thành phố biển

*Ví dụ: Vung Tau and Da Nang are the two well-known coastal cities in Vietnam.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do Vietnamese people like travelling abroad?

I cannot speak for everyone, but I guess the answer is yes, mainly because people in Vietnam love to explore new cultures and scenery. Plus, one of the most apparent **traits**<sup>(1)</sup> of Vietnamese is that they love to **keep up with the Joneses**<sup>(2)</sup>. This means travelling overseas is actually a way to show off their social status because only the rich can afford that.

<sup>(1)</sup>**trait** /treɪt/ (n): đặc điểm

Ví dụ: *Your greatest character trait is your honesty.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**keep up with the Joneses** / ki:p ʌp wɪð ðə 'dʒəʊnzɪz/ (idiom): bằng bạn bằng bè

Ví dụ: *Most people in my area tend to keep up with the Joneses, without considering about whether they can afford it or not.*

### 2. Who prefers travelling abroad? The young or the old?

Without a doubt, the young are obviously keener on travelling abroad. Firstly, they are probably more adventurous and have more of a **thirst for adventure**<sup>(3)</sup> and are eager to **step out of their comfort zone**<sup>(4)</sup>. Furthermore, their mental and physical health accommodate them to handle long-distance travel, while the old may not have the sufficient strength to cope with different weather conditions and **motion sickness**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**a thirst for adventure** / ə θɜːst fɔːr əd'ventʃə/: khát khao thám hiểm

Ví dụ: *Growing in a small town, I constantly had a thirst for adventure.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**to step out of someone comfort zone** / tuː step aʊt ɒv 'sʌmwʌn 'kʌmfət zəʊn/: bước ra khỏi vùng an toàn của ai đó

Ví dụ: *Step out of your comfort zone or you may never be an adult.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**motion sickness** /'məʊʃən 'sɪknɪs/ (n): say tàu, xe

Ví dụ: *I hate to travel by car because I have a terrible motion sickness.*

### 3. How much time do you think people should spend on a trip abroad?

It depends on the purpose of that trip. If it is a business trip, the right amount of time depends on the company directive. However, if it is just for pleasure, I'd say the ideal time must be around 3 to 5 days. This is extremely favorable because, within that period, travelers can explore a travel destination as much as possible without feeling bored or tired.

### 4. Which is better for knowing more about a country? Travelling or reading books about it?

Obviously, travelling will be more beneficial than reading books. One of the major **upsides**<sup>(6)</sup> of travelling is that it can broaden the mind of any individual. Travelling is also a great opportunity to develop a wider outlook on life and perspective on living. However, some people may argue that books can also bring the same value as travelling. I personally disagree with that because the view of any book is influenced by the author's opinion. Thus, we cannot figure out which details are **biased**<sup>(7)</sup>, and which are not. In the end, a person can only open their eyes through actual experience.

<sup>(6)</sup>**upside** /'ʌpsaɪd/ (n): thể mạnh

Ví dụ: *The most significant upside of living in a countryside that you can eat organic food whenever you want.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**bias (v)** /'biːəs/: thiên vị

Ví dụ: *My father always biases my brother since he is the youngest in the family.*

# Eating something for the first time

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you ate something for the first time

You should say:

- What you ate
- When you ate it
- Where you were
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

This is actually an **intriguing**<sup>(1)</sup> topic for me because I am a **food lover**<sup>(2)</sup> and I always love trying new **cuisine**<sup>(3)</sup> whenever I have a chance. Last year, I had an opportunity to try out sushi, which has become one of my favorite dishes ever since. Basically, sushi is a traditional Japanese dish consisting of **vinegared rice**<sup>(4)</sup>, sugar, salt, and a variety of other ingredients such as seafood, raw meat, and vegetables. If I'm not mistaken, my aunt took her son and me to Sushi Hokkaido - a Japanese restaurant specializing in sushi. My first impression was the Japanese-styled decoration of the place, which instantly **blew my mind**<sup>(5)</sup>. My first sushi roll was served on a **minimalist**<sup>(6)</sup> **geometric plate**<sup>(7)</sup> and absolutely looked **appealing**<sup>(8)</sup>. With the first bite, I was immediately **mesmerized**<sup>(9)</sup> by its **savory taste**<sup>(10)</sup>. When I tried the second bite with other side dishes like pickled ginger and soy sauce, the taste was even more rich and **aromatic**<sup>(11)</sup>. I have to say that in general, we had a **sophisticated meal**<sup>(12)</sup>. On top of that, I really enjoyed watching the cooking process, which was displayed on a monitor in front of us. After this experience, I was so charmed by the taste of sushi that I've made visiting this place a monthly routine.

1. **intriguing** /ɪn'tri:ɡɪŋ/ (adj): hấp dẫn

Ví dụ: Sarah and me became friends because I like her intriguing personality

2. **food lover** / fu:d 'lʌvə/ (n): người thích ăn uống

Ví dụ: With a variety of delicious dishes, Viet Nam is a paradise for food lovers.

3. **cuisine** / kwi(:)'zi:n/ (n): ẩm thực

Ví dụ: The flavor in Vietnamese cuisine is so good that you won't want to leave anything on your plate.

4. **vinegared rice** /'vɪnɪɡəd raɪs/: gạo ngâm dấm

Ví dụ: The traditional sushi is made of vinegared rice and sashimi.

5. **blow someone's mind** /maɪnd 'sʌm.wʌnz bləʊ/: bị choáng ngợp bởi

Ví dụ: The climax of the film really blew my mind.

6. **minimalist** /'mɪnɪmlɪst/ (n): người theo chủ nghĩa tối giản

Ví dụ: Giang Oi, a Vietnamese influencer, is known as a minimalist.

7. **geometric plate** /,dʒiə'metɪk plɛɪt/: đĩa có hoa văn

Ví dụ: A modern geometric plate uses a simple geometric patterns as a design element.

8. **appealing** /ə'pi:lɪŋ/ (adj): hấp dẫn

Ví dụ: All the tourists seem to be attracted with appealing historic scenery.

9. **mesmerize** /'mɛzməraɪz/ (v): bị mê hoặc

Ví dụ: Her beautiful voice mesmerized the audiences.

10. **savory taste** /'seɪvəri teɪst/: vị đậm đà

Ví dụ: People in the middle of Viet Nam tend to have a more savory taste than other area.

11. **aromatic** /,æərəʊ'mætɪk/ (adj): thơm

Ví dụ: When cooking Pho, people usually add many aromatic ingredients to make the broth smell good.

12. **sophisticated meal** / sə'fɪstɪkətɪd mi:l/: bữa ăn thịnh soạn

Ví dụ: After the examination, we had a sophisticated meal to offset our effort in 3 months.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kinds of foreign food are popular in your country?

Well, I guess French fries is the most well-known. People like this dish because it is **crunchy**<sup>(1)</sup> and tasty, yet easy to make. It is actually a foreign dish, but my mom and my grandmother know exactly the best recipe to cook it perfectly. Furthermore, it's small and you can take it away and easily enjoy it **on the run**<sup>(2)</sup> or even when you are in a rush.

<sup>(1)</sup>**crunchy** /'krʌntʃi/ (adj): giòn

Ví dụ: Some people toast their buns for a crisp, crunchy texture.

<sup>(2)</sup>**on the run** /ɒn ðə rʌn/: trên đường

Ví dụ: Look like we have our documents on the run.

### 2. What are young people's opinions on new food?

As a millennial, I'm quite sure that the youth's perspective on food is pretty open. As a matter of fact, most young people don't mind trying foreign cuisine or strange dishes. For example, young Vietnamese people had warmly received fresh milk with black sugar pearls a couple of years ago. Now, black sugar pearls, or boba, have become a trend in the youth's culinary world and people attempt to put this tasty food in every dish, such as instant noodles.

### 3. How about old people?

I can see that the elderly are more cautious about their diet. They have the tendency to stick to a safe diet and check the **authenticity**<sup>(3)</sup> of every ingredient in their food since they are afraid of any health-related risks. As a result, they won't be willing to try out new food like young people.

<sup>(3)</sup>**authenticity** /ˌɔːθən'tɪsɪti/: tính xác thực

Ví dụ: The authenticity of a product has to be one of the most important pieces of information to look at.

### 4. Should teachers and parents teach children how to cook?

To be honest, I think cooking is an essential soft skill for everyone. Nevertheless, schools and families tend to underestimate it. One of the major advantages of learning cooking at a young age is helping children to build up their self-confidence and lay the foundation for healthy eating habits. Plus, developing basic cooking skills can also help a child to learn basic math skills by doing something as simple as counting eggs or measuring ingredients. Therefore, schools ought to hold cooking workshops or extra cooking classes to encourage students to cook, and parents should take cooking into account when educating their children.

### 5. Why do people like their local food?

Well, on the whole, I guess there are three fundamental reasons. Firstly, local food benefits their local economy by supporting local farmers and producers. Secondly, local food is more likely to be **organic**<sup>(3)</sup> as the local markets mainly sell a high standard of food to local customers. And finally, people seem to prefer their local dishes thanks to their taste since they are familiar with the seasoning and how it's cooked.

<sup>(3)</sup>**organic** /ɔː'ɡænik/ (adj): hữu cơ

Ví dụ: Organic food is noticeably expensive than inorganic food.



# Computer problem

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when your computer broke down

You should say:

- When it was
- What you were doing
- What you did about it
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

These days, it's almost impossible for me to work without my personal laptop. Quite frankly, I had already experienced a week without using it due to an extremely nonsense technical issue. When I was a junior student, I used to have a 12 inch rose gold MacBook. As I remember, I used it every day to finish all of my school assignments and my part-time work's projects. One day, I was in the middle of doing a **dissertation paper**<sup>(1)</sup> for my university when my laptop was nearly **out of battery**<sup>(2)</sup>, and I had to charge it. Unfortunately, my adapter couldn't connect to my laptop even though I had tried different plugs. Despite all of my effort, the situation only got worse, and my laptop shut down eventually. I was so worried, and my only choice was to take it to the **warranty service**<sup>(3)</sup> center. At the store, the technician told me that my laptop's integrated circuit, which is a type of microchip, was **defective**<sup>(4)</sup>. He emphasized that if I wanted to repair the chip, I must buy a new one. The price for that small chip was more than 2 million Vietnam Dong, ridiculously high for a piece of hardware. But I had to pay for it unwillingly because it was my only **resort**<sup>(5)</sup>. Looking back, it was a total nightmare for me since I had to wait for a week to get my laptop back. I literally could not do anything, and all of my ongoing work had to be postponed.

**1. dissertation paper** /ˌdɪsə(:)'teɪʃən 'peɪpə / (n): bài luận văn

*Ví dụ: All senior students are required to finish their dissertation before the end of July.*

**2. out of battery** /aʊt ɒv 'bætəri:/ hết pin

*Ví dụ: My smartphone suddenly ran out of battery yesterday.*

**3. warranty service** /'wɒrənti 'sɜ:vɪs/: dịch vụ bảo hành

*Ví dụ: The warranty service is only responsible for the manufacturer's faults.*

**4. defective** /dɪ'fɛktɪv/ (adj): bị lỗi

*Ví dụ: If the phone proves defective, you have the right to compensation.*

**5. resort** /rɪ'zɔ:t/ (n): phương pháp

*Ví dụ: We have to sell the house, that is the last resort to pay for the debt.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What do people use computers for?

Undoubtedly, we use computers in every aspect of life including medicine, education, banking, **leisure activities**<sup>(1)</sup> and just about everything else I can think of. For example, people use computers regularly at home for online shopping, distance learning, watching movies or listening to music. In other fields like business or hospitals, computers are used to store customer information on databases and for operation.

<sup>(1)</sup>**leisure activity** / 'leɪʒər æk'tɪvəti/: hoạt động vui chơi giải trí

Ví dụ: *Many people consider reading books as a leisure activity.*

### 2. Should students be allowed to use computers at school?

Well, by and large, I believe that using computers at school creates too many distractions for students because of the internet. I cannot deny the fact that computers help students to take notes and **multitask**<sup>(2)</sup> better than traditional methods. However, the more they concentrate on their computers, the less they attend class activities and discussions. Therefore, it reduces a significant amount of efficiency for the time they spend in class.

<sup>(2)</sup>**multitasking** /,mʌltɪ'tɑːskɪŋ/ (n): đa nhiệm

Ví dụ: *Women are often better at multitasking than men.*

### 3. What do you think of people who are addicted to computers?

Actually, I have witnessed a lot of my students, who have noticeable computer addiction symptoms. Most of them suffered from depression or anxiety when their parents established time restrictions for using computers and isolated themselves from their families and friends. This serious addiction will lead to serious consequences for them in the long-term as I can see their grades are slipping **proportionally**<sup>(3)</sup> to the time they spend on computers.

<sup>(3)</sup>**proportionally** / prə'pɔːʃənli / (adv): tỷ lệ thuận

Ví dụ: *Freelancer rate is proportionally lower in the south of the country.*

### 4. Do you think computers make our life simpler or more complex?

I would say without any hesitation that computers make human lives more efficient than before. Computers nowadays play a major role in manufacturing, operations, and many more human tasks, you name it. In other words, almost every production and procedure in our daily lives has been **digitized**<sup>(4)</sup> making computers an essential part of modern society. Moreover, computers bring endless fun and convenience because there are plenty of applications and programs that support users in their work and study, or games to entertain after a long, stressful day.

<sup>(4)</sup>**digitize** /'dɪdʒɪtaɪz / (v): số hoá

Ví dụ: *My sister drawing has been digitized by a scanner.*

# Encouraging someone

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you encouraged someone to do something that he/she didn't want to do

You should say:

- Who he or she is
- What you encouraged him/her to do
- How he/she reacted
- And explain why you encouraged him/her to do it

### Answer

I'd like to tell you about the time I tried to persuade my high school best friend, Nhi, to participate in a singing competition. So, what happened was, in our final year, I decided to do something crazy - join a talent competition. I've always had a passion for dancing but was just too afraid to show anyone, except for Nhi. In Nhi's case, she has one of the best voices I've ever heard but also has an introverted personality. But I made my first attempt asking her to sign up for the competition together. Her initial response was predictable, which was a solid no. What I kept on doing was diligently practicing my dance and I would ask her for feedback after every practice. Seeing how much effort I put into this thing, Nhi began to **see it in a different light**<sup>(1)</sup>, that it wasn't bad to be passionate about something. Then I **snuck up**<sup>(2)</sup> on my chance and tried to talk things over with her again. I promised to be there for her and told her that it'd be okay even if we couldn't win because we'd still be there for each other no matter what. Finally, she was convinced and **mustered up all of her courage**<sup>(3)</sup> to give it a chance. The biggest **twist**<sup>(4)</sup> is, she entered the final round and surprisingly won the gold medal! Although I lost, I was still overjoyed. I made a lot of beautiful memories with Nhi before she went abroad to study. I'm so glad she was able to open up, and I know she felt the same way I did.

#### 1. see something in a different light

/si: 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn ə 'dɪfrənt laɪt/ (idiom): nhìn nhận một cái gì đó khác với trước đó

Ví dụ: *I used to think that Anna is a bad person but after a talk with her last night, I see her in a different light.*

#### 2. sneak up / sni:k ʌp / (phr. v): tiếp cận một cách lén lút

Ví dụ: *Don't sneak up behind me like that anymore, you scared me.*

#### 3. muster up all of one's courage

/'mʌstər ʌp ɔ:l ɒv wʌnz 'kʌrɪdʒ/ (phrase): dành hết sự can đảm

Ví dụ: *He mustered up all of his courage to express his love.*

#### 4. twist / twɪst/ (n): điều bất ngờ

Ví dụ: *The twist at the end of the movie definitely surprised me.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. How can leaders encourage their employees?

There are plenty of ways, including **monetary**<sup>(1)</sup> and **nonmonetary**<sup>(2)</sup>. Firstly, **financial incentives**<sup>(3)</sup> are mostly used by employers to motivate their employees by rewarding those who have excellent performance at work. Nonmonetary incentives such as compliments, positive feedback, or confidence in them, on the other hand, give employees motivation in the long run.

<sup>(1)</sup>**monetary** /'mʌnɪtəri/ (adj): tiền tệ

Ví dụ: *The monetary system of China used to be based on gold.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**non-monetary** / nɒn 'mʌnɪtəri/ (adj): phi tiền tệ

Ví dụ: *The statistic shows that non-monetary incentives cannot satisfy the desire of their employees.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**financial incentives** / faɪ'nænfəl m'sentɪvz/: sự khuyến khích về tài chính

Ví dụ: *Our company will remove the financial incentive for late payment buyers.*

### 2. When should parents encourage their children?

From my point of view, the benefits of receiving encouragement are undeniable and children who are motivated by their parents can develop both mentally and physically. That's why I would say it's always **crucial**<sup>(4)</sup> for parents to give their kids a little word of encouragement every day, like complimenting on how smart, hardworking, or well-behaved they are. You know, small things parents say or do will help **foster**<sup>(5)</sup> mentally healthy children, positively affecting their development.

<sup>(4)</sup>**crucial** /'kruːʃəl/ (adj): cốt yếu, cốt lõi

Ví dụ: *Communication is a crucial factor in a relationship.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**foster** / 'fɒstə/ (v): nuôi dưỡng

Ví dụ: *Jenny was fostered by her grandmother.*

### 3. What kind of encouragement should parents give?

Well, praising children for their efforts whether they achieve good results or not can motivate them greatly. However, too much of this can also do the opposite. And by that, I mean their kids may feel a little bit burdened. When it comes to times like that, maybe it's best to look for a nonverbal way to encourage children, for example, a smile, a high five or even a thumbs up can make your children feel secure and supported.

### 4. Do you think some people are better than others at persuading?

Honestly speaking, I think that some people are really just born with this amazing ability to convince others. Take the world's most famous businessman, Steve Jobs, as an example. He is very well-known for his presentation skills that were able **to draw the attention of the listeners**<sup>(6)</sup> and make them believe what he believed in. I strongly believe that persuasive people are successful ones.

<sup>(6)</sup>**to draw the attention of someone** / tu: drɔ: ði ə'tenʃ(ə)n ov 'sʌmwʌn/: thu hút sự chú ý của ai đó

Ví dụ: *He doesn't like to draw the attention of his friend to his illness.*

# An occasion

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

**Describe an occasion when you lost your way**

You should say:

- Where you were
- What happened
- How you felt
- And explain how you found your way

### Answer

I have to admit that I am not good at **navigating**<sup>(1)</sup> so there have been numerous cases when I lost my bearings. The most memorable time was when I missed an important interview as I forgot to plan the route in advance. I was supposed to arrive at an iconic building in district 1, so I assumed that it was some tourist attraction, and I could not miss such a place. It turned out that I was wrong. On that morning, I overslept so I didn't have time to search for the specific address and I thought to myself that I could ask passers-by for some directions. The problem was that they showed me the way to the highest building in town but not the one I was looking for. I had no idea that I was going the wrong way until I arrived at the place. Needless to say, I was almost on the verge of giving up but then I tried to **steady my nerves**<sup>(2)</sup> to find my **bearings**<sup>(3)</sup>. I am aware of the fact that I have a **lousy sense of direction**<sup>(4)</sup> and at that time, I no longer had faith in the surrounding people, so I turned to an online map for help. In the **blink of an eye**<sup>(5)</sup>, it suggested the shortest route leading right to the location and I followed its instructions. Unfortunately, by the time I got there, the interview had already finished so it was a **dreadful day**<sup>(6)</sup> for me. Anyway, since then, I always prepare the route carefully and arrive at every appointment 15 minutes in advance.

**1. navigate** /'nævɪgeɪt/ (v): định hướng  
Ví dụ: Sailors use compass and map to help them navigate.

**2. steady someone's nerves** /'stedi 'sɑ:mwʌnz nɜ:vz/: giảm sự lo lắng của ai đó

Ví dụ: I need to drink a glass of water to steady my nerves.

**3. bearing** /'beərɪŋ/ (n): sự chịu đựng  
Ví dụ: It takes a while to get your bearings when you start a new job.

**4. a lousy sense of direction** / ə 'ləʊzi sɛns ɒv dɪ'rekʃən/: khả năng định hướng tồi tệ

Ví dụ: My lousy sense of direction leads me to a lot of troubles.

**5. blink of an eye** / blɪŋk ɒv ən aɪ / (idiom): trong chớp mắt

Ví dụ: The robbery was over in the blink of an eye.

**6. dreadful day** /'dredfʊl deɪ/ (n): ngày tồi tệ

Ví dụ: Today is such a dreadful day, everything seems to have gone wrong.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Why do some people get lost more easily than others?

Well, everything considered, I suppose there are two major reasons that explain why some people have a bad sense of direction. Firstly, a lot of people suffer from memory problems, so they cannot recall where they have gone or distinguish between different directions. Additionally, some just have terrible navigation skills, which give them a hard time telling directions, even when using Google Maps.

### 2. Do you think it is important to be able to read a map?

Undoubtedly, map reading skills are just as essential as any other soft skills, especially for those who are runners and cyclists. Although some people may say that nowadays we can use GPS and map applications on mobile phones such as Google Maps, there is no perfect **substitute**<sup>(1)</sup> for paper maps as these maps never run out of Wi-Fi or battery or lose connection.

<sup>(1)</sup>**substitute** /'sʌbstɪtju:t/ (n): vật thay thế  
Ví dụ: *Can you be the substitute for the teacher who is ill?*

### 3. Do you think it is important to do some preparation before you travel to new places?

I would say that planning your trip ahead is the best way to save time and make the most out of the experience. By targeting which places they want to go, they can prioritize what they want to experience first and avoid overspending. Although sometimes being spontaneous can give you unexpectedly good memories, it is still vital to prepare beforehand to **steer clear of unwanted risks**<sup>(2)</sup>.

<sup>(2)</sup>**steer clear of something** / stɪə klɪə ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ/: phòng tránh được việc gì đó  
Ví dụ: *Her doctor advised her to steer clear of alcohol.*

### 4. How can people find their way when they are lost?

In the past, our ancestors used to use the north star to navigate their way if they were **stranded**<sup>(3)</sup> in the middle of nowhere. For now, I'm quite sure that our generation prefers Google Maps or other navigation apps due to their convenience and ease of use. This also makes them lack navigation skills, which is a survival skill when travelling or exploring new places.

<sup>(3)</sup>**stranded** /'strændɪd/ (adj): bị kẹt lại  
Ví dụ: *Two years ago, I was stranded in America without money or friends.*

# Wait in line

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time you had to wait in line(queue up) for a long time

You should say:

- When it was
- Where you were
- Why you were there
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

I've never considered myself to be impatient. But there was one instance when I was extremely **irritated**<sup>(1)</sup> by waiting. At the time, I had to line up to get the covid 19 vaccine in my area. Even though the local authorities had already visited each house to **compile**<sup>(2)</sup> a list and collect all **declarations**<sup>(3)</sup>, people had to wait for quite some time when they arrived. I recall being told that we needed to arrive very early in the morning, around 7 a.m. That day, I arrived on time and got in line. However, after 2 hours of waiting, they informed us that there were insufficient **injections**<sup>(4)</sup> for everyone and asked us to return the following day. I was so shocked and **enraged**<sup>(5)</sup> since my whole family had to rearrange all of our work schedules. I did have a very important class that morning. Instead of gathering everyone in one place, they could simply call each neighborhood out based on the number of injections available. You know, that's a lot of time and effort, not to mention that it can pose a risk of being **infected**<sup>(6)</sup> **amid**<sup>(7)</sup> this stressful epidemic situation. I hope people will prepare better in advance for social events like this to avoid unwanted situations.

**1. irritated** /'ɪrɪteɪtɪd/ (adj): cảm thấy phiền phức

*Ví dụ: He is irritated by looking after his siblings.*

**2. compile** /kəm'paɪl/ (v): soạn thảo (danh sách, văn bản,...)

*Ví dụ: Remember to compile the documents before our meeting this afternoon.*

**3. declaration** /ˌdɛklə'reɪʃən/ (n): tờ khai

*Ví dụ: I have to fill out the declaration everytime I visit any public places.*

**4. injection** /ɪn'dʒɛkʃən/ (n): mũi tiêm

*Ví dụ: Because of the COVID-19 pandemic, people must take the vaccine injection.*

**5. enraged** /m'reɪdʒd/ (adj): phẫn nộ

*Ví dụ: Due to my laziness, my mom is enraged.*

**6. infectious** /ɪn'fɛkʃəs/ (adj): lây nhiễm, truyền nhiễm

*Ví dụ: Flu is highly infectious.*

**7. amid** /ə'mɪd/ (prep): bị bao quanh bởi

*Ví dụ: On the wall, amid many paintings, is the small window.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do Vietnamese people often wait in line?

They didn't many years ago because they didn't think it was necessary. But things have changed, people are more **civilized**<sup>(1)</sup> now. Vietnamese people are more receptive to good new virtues, and queuing is definitely one of them. Now I'm seeing people lining up in supermarkets, in front of shops, you name it. But there are still some people here and there, especially the elderly, who still think they can cut the line because they are older.

<sup>(1)</sup>**civilized** /'sɪvɪlaɪzd/ (adj); văn minh

Ví dụ: *The urban area has gone through many changes, and become more civilized.*

### 2. Do you think the development of technology has reduced the time people spend on waiting?

Surely. The **advent**<sup>(2)</sup> of technology certainly saves people from complex procedures, especially when going shopping. For example, Uniqlo stores in Japan have automatic check out systems, in which you only need to place your basket with chosen products, and they will be billed in a blink of an eye. This enables them to serve more customers per day and saves them from waiting in line

<sup>(2)</sup>**advent** /'ædvənt/ (n): có mặt, xuất hiện

Ví dụ: *Every year, we are able to see the advent of the new iPhone models.*

### 3. What do you think of those who cut in line or jump the queue ?

Simply rude. A lot of people think they are **privileged**<sup>(3)</sup> just because they are older, but everyone should be treated equally in every social activity. I would always speak up whenever I see people cutting the line in supermarkets, regardless of their age.

<sup>(3)</sup>**privileged** /'prɪvɪlɪdʒd/ (adj): có đặc quyền

Ví dụ: *She is privileged in fixing every project, because she is the director of this company.*

### 4. How can companies improve their customer service?

I would say professional training for every employee in the company. especially those in the customer service department. Customers should feel they are always welcomed whether they are going to purchase or use the service there or not. From what I see, many companies still **take customer service for granted**<sup>(4)</sup> because they believe the quality of their products will win the buyers; but if companies want **customer loyalty**<sup>(5)</sup>, customer service is a must.

<sup>(4)</sup>**take something for granted** / teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ fɔ: 'grɑ:ntɪd/: coi thường cái gì đó

Ví dụ: *Mom sacrifices everything for us no matter what, but don't take her love for granted.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**customer loyalty** /'kʌstəmə 'lɔɪəlti/: sự trung thành của khách hàng

Ví dụ: *In order to gain customer loyalty, salers must produce high quality products with reasonable prices.*



# Feeling bored

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe a time when you felt bored

You should say:

- When it was
- Who you were with
- What you were doing
- And explain why you felt bored

### Answer

I am not proud to say this, but I used to be a phone addict, which means that no matter how much I applied myself, I couldn't **ditch**<sup>(1)</sup> my phone. I guess deep down, I know that it's the only thing that can **spice my life up**<sup>(2)</sup> because I can **cheer myself up**<sup>(3)</sup> when interacting with my friends online or **gossip**<sup>(4)</sup> with them on the phone for hours. Checking the phone has gradually become second nature to me, but that is not a good thing. Then one day, I suffered from some eye disorder including **blurry vision**<sup>(5)</sup> and dry, itchy eyes, and the doctor insisted that I need to keep the phone out of my reach for at least one week. As he broke the news to me, I felt like my whole world was falling apart. I **fretted over the thought of**<sup>(6)</sup> missing out on everything from my friends' gossip to celebrity scandals. Plus, boredom is my pet hate and without my phone, it's **inevitable**<sup>(7)</sup>. But, I had no choice but to **grin and bear it**<sup>(8)</sup>, hoping I could recover in no time. In fact, I was not allowed to look at the screen of any gadget at all, so I racked my brain to figure out how I could cheer myself up. I tried all the tips I picked up on the internet, even the **cliché**<sup>(9)</sup> one like thinking about how harmful a phone can be, but none of them worked. For the first time in my life, I could actually feel that I have all the time in the world simply because I was **at a loose end**<sup>(10)</sup>. Nothing could actually entertain me even when I tried **retail therapy**<sup>(11)</sup> which has worked for many girls. That's how I survived a whole week of boredom.

**1. ditch** / dɪtʃ / (v): từ bỏ

Ví dụ: He was unbearable, so I ditched him right after we moved in together.

**2. spice something up** / speɪs 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp / (phr. v): làm cho điều gì đó trở nên hào hứng

Ví dụ: Let's invite Tom over to the party, he always knows how to spice things up.

**3. cheer someone up** / tʃiə 'sʌmwʌn ʌp / (phr. v): làm ai đó vui vẻ

Ví dụ: He broke up with his girlfriend yesterday, we should find a way to cheer him up.

**4. gossip** / 'ɡɒsɪp / (v): buôn chuyện

Ví dụ: When we gather together, our girls usually gossip for hours.

**5. blurry vision** / 'blɜːrɪ 'vɪʒən /: mờ mắt

Ví dụ: I have to wear thick glasses because of the blurry vision.

**6. fretted over something** / 'fretɪd 'əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ / (idiom): cảm thấy lo lắng vì điều gì đó

Ví dụ: His mom is fretted over the thought that he has been kidnapped.

**7. inevitable** / ɪn'evɪtəbl / (adj): chắc chắn xảy ra

Ví dụ: The existence of new viruses is inevitable.

**8. grin and bear in** / grɪn ænd beə ɪn /: mỉm cười và chịu đựng

Ví dụ: I was the only one that didn't agree with the plan. My family was full of excitement. So, I can only grin and bear it.

**9. cliché (n):** sáo rỗng

Ví dụ: Men love to give cliché.

**10. at a loose end** / æt ə luːs end / (idiom): không biết mình muốn gì

Ví dụ: When choosing the university I want to apply, I was at a loose end.

**11. retail therapy** / 'riːteɪl 'θerəpi / (n): đi mua sắm để giải quyết nỗi buồn

Ví dụ: I experienced retail therapy, in order to get over our breakup.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. When do people feel bored?

Well, there are plenty of occasions in which a person may have to deal with boredom, but I guess they will experience this feeling mostly when they lack choice or control over their daily activities, which means they have to do the same tasks day by day due to other forces and don't have the right to choose what they want to enjoy. Moreover, people can also feel exhausted when they must cope with a heavy workload and don't have time for entertainment.

### 2. What can people do when they feel bored?

To make **downtime**<sup>(1)</sup> more meaningful and productive, the easiest solution I can think of is to take a deep breath and drink a cup of water. I have tried this method several times and it always works. Also, writing a diary is actually an awesome way to distract your mind from boredom as noting down your feelings can keep you calm as well as reduce your anxiety.

<sup>(1)</sup>**downtime** /'daʊntaɪm/ (n): khoảng thời gian khó khăn

Ví dụ: *COVID-19 is a downtime for everyone from all around the world.*

### 3. Do people get bored with daily routines?

Like what I've mentioned, I'm pretty sure that repetition in day-to-day activities could possibly trap a person into boredom. In fact, repeating the same tasks over and over again is driving many young people insane. That being said, doing the same thing day after day reduces their eagerness, so an occasional **get-away**<sup>(2)</sup> would do wonders for one's mental health.

<sup>(2)</sup>**get-away** / ɡet-ə'weɪ/ (n): kỳ nghỉ

Ví dụ: *I plan to have a get-away next year, after the pandemic is over.*

### 4. Is it easier for the young people to feel bored than for the old?

I'm not entirely sure, but I guess the youngsters can easily suffer from boredom faster than the elderly. One of the main reasons is that most young people are never constant in one direction, they love to experience new challenges. As a result, they will always seek fun, excitement, and thrill from every activity; and prefer to move out of the same tasks and do alternative things instead to avoid being in a bored state.

# A promise to someone

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time you made a promise to someone

You should say:

- What the promise was
- To whom you made it
- Whether it was easy or difficult to keep
- And explain why you made it

### Answer

The first thing that **springs**<sup>(1)</sup> to my mind was the time when I **mustered the courage**<sup>(2)</sup> to make a promise to my mother. Back when I was 16 years old, the singer I idolized the most, Son Tung MTP, announced that he would hold a concert in Ho Chi Minh City. It was such a **once-in-a-lifetime opportunity**<sup>(3)</sup>, so I was determined to attend the concert no matter what it took. So, to **gain my mother's approval**<sup>(4)</sup>, I promised her that I would **ace**<sup>(5)</sup> this exam. And in return, she would get me a ticket to the concert. She eventually agreed to it. So, I gave it my all for one month, studying for exams at all hours of the day and night, never missing a single tutoring session, and even taking online tutoring. In the end, all of my effort **paid off**<sup>(6)</sup>. I was at the top of my class; I still remember feeling extremely proud and overjoyed holding that ticket in my hand. Maybe that ticket is proof that if you are determined and **persevere**<sup>(7)</sup> to do something until the end, anything can be achieved.

1. **spring** /sprɪŋ/ (v): tăng tốc

Ví dụ: I sprung into action right after the contest was announced to begin.

2. **muster the courage** /'mʌstə ðə 'kʌrɪdʒ/: tập trung hết sự can đảm

Ví dụ: I mustered the courage to tell my parents that I want to go and study abroad.

3. **once-in-a-lifetime opportunity**

/ wʌns-ɪn-ə-'laɪftaɪm ,ɒpə'tju:nɪti/: cơ hội chỉ có một

Ví dụ: Being able to be recruited by Microsoft is a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity.

4. **gain someone's approval** / geɪn 'sʌmwʌnz ə'pru:vəl/: có được sự công nhận từ một ai đó

Ví dụ: I worked extremely hard just to gain my boss's approval.

5. **ace** /eɪs/ (v): chinh phục

Ví dụ: I aced the IELTS test, because I had reviewed all the main points.

6. **paid off** / peɪd ɒf / (phr. v): thành công

Ví dụ: His hard work has finally paid off.

7. **persevere** /,pɜːsɪ'veɪə/ (v): kiên trì

Ví dụ: If you persevere to do something, you can ace it with ease

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kinds of promises do people often make?

I guess all kinds of promises you can think of. Many people nowadays tend to make promises knowing they can't keep because at the time when those promises are made, people believe everything is possible. From what I notice, people make a lot of promises when they are in love, but not many are dedicated enough to holding on to them.

### 2. Do parents in Vietnam make promises to their children?

They do and not only do parents in Vietnam but anywhere in the world. I believe parents do that because they want to give their children **reassurance**<sup>(1)</sup> and teach them about **commitment**<sup>(2)</sup>. If parents can keep the promises, their kids will grow up being more responsible for their words.

<sup>(1)</sup>**reassurance** /ˌriːəˈʃʊərəns / (n): sự đảm bảo  
Ví dụ: *If you love someone, you will always want to give your partner reassurance.*  
<sup>(2)</sup>**commitment** /kəˈmɪtmənt / (n): sự cam kết  
Ví dụ: *Marriage is a lifetime commitment.*

### 3. Do children keep their promises?

Most of them do, because children are born naive and believe that they will be punished if going against their words, at least that's what I was taught when I was a kid. But if their parents are constantly breaking their promises, children can learn the **mechanism**<sup>(3)</sup> of lying and gradually form a bad habit like their parents.

<sup>(3)</sup>**mechanism** /ˈmekənɪzəm / (n): cơ chế  
Ví dụ: *This robot mechanism is quite complicated.*

### 4. Why do some people fail to keep their promises?

There are plenty of reasons and people always come up with a reason to justify them. I think the main reason is that most of us take our own words, or promises, for granted and do not think thoroughly the moment we make those promises. Or in some cases, people promise something just to avoid inconvenience or further conversation so those promises eventually **slip out of their minds**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**slip out of one's minds** /slɪp aʊt ɒv wʌnz maɪndz/: quên mất điều gì đó  
Ví dụ: *I promised my mom to come home on her birthday, but it slipped out of my mind due to my busy schedule.*

# A part of a city

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a part of a city or town you enjoy spending time in

You should say:

- Where it is
- What it is like
- What you do there
- And explain why you enjoy spending time there

### Answer

Since I am an **outdoorsy person**<sup>(1)</sup>, I love spending time outside, especially on the beach because it is just a **stone's throw from my house**<sup>(2)</sup>. Today, I will share with you how much I love to be near the sea in my city. The beach there is perfectly clean, and the water is crystal clear, so it has become one of the most favorite tourist attractions.

Actually, when I was a child, I had **aquaphobia**<sup>(3)</sup> because I almost drowned one time, so I want to overcome my fear by doing more aquatic activities. I've toyed with the idea of sunbathing everyday but rarely have a chance to do so because I am always up to my ears in work. There are plenty of things to enjoy on the beach but my favorite one has always been sunbathing

There is no fear of doing this activity as it is not an adventure water sport like **parasailing**<sup>(4)</sup> or kiteboarding. Plus, I want to get a perfect **tan**<sup>(5)</sup> to show off to my coworkers because sometimes, they pick on me and that really **gets on my nerves**<sup>(7)</sup>. Soaking in the sun will also reduce my stress levels and give me tons of natural vitamin D. This leisure activity will not only be my chance to escape the daily grind but also to spend more time near the sea, being closer to nature.

1. **outdoorsy person** /ˌaʊtˈdɔːrzi 'pɜːsn/: người thích hoạt động ngoài trời

Ví dụ: *Jamie considers herself an outdoorsy person who has an active life.*

2. **a stone's throw from somewhere** /ə stəʊnz θrəʊ frɒm 'sʌmweə/ (idiom): khoảng cách đến đâu đó rất gần

Ví dụ: *The puppies were sitting just a stone's throw away from us.*

3. **aquaphobia (n)**: chứng sợ nước  
Ví dụ: *Jane is scared of the water because she has had aquaphobia since she was little.*

4. **parasailing (n)**: dù lượn trên nước  
Ví dụ: *Our ecotourism destination has a lot of extreme sports including parasailing.*

5. **tan** /tæn / (n): rám nắng  
Ví dụ: *Lana has just gone back from the beach. She got a really nice tan.*

6. **be up to someone's ear in something (idiom)**: ai đó bận rộn để làm chuyện gì đó

Ví dụ: *I'm up to my ears in work because our company has just undergone a huge staff cutback*

7. **get on someone nerve** / get ɒn 'sʌmwʌn nɜːv/: làm ai đó bức tức  
Ví dụ: *Living together with a new roommate always makes us get on each other's nerves.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. How do public places change in towns or cities?

I believe the government has to develop urban public places accordingly with the public demand, which mainly comes from the younger generation and the influence of globalization. Public places nowadays have been modernized in looks and facilities, making them tourist attractions. These places, I believe, are not only free shared spaces but also **photo-taking spots**<sup>(1)</sup>.

<sup>(1)</sup>**photo-taking spot** /'fəʊtəʊ-'teɪkɪŋ spɒt/: địa điểm chụp hình

Ví dụ: *Da Lat is a famous place for the young thanks to its beautiful photo-taking spots.*

### 2. What public places do old people usually go to?

I'm not the best person to answer, but I see many older people gathering in parks every morning to do exercise or go jogging. I guess they love to go there because they want to **immerse themselves in nature**<sup>(2)</sup> and hang out with people their age. I assume they don't go out very often unless they need to exercise.

<sup>(2)</sup>**immerse in something** /'ɪmɜːs ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ/: đắm mình vào gì đó

Ví dụ: *She got some books out of the library and immersed herself in the story of the novel.*

### 3. Why do young people like to go to public places?

Well, the primary reason young people love to go to public places is because they can meet up with their friends and have a sense of belonging. These places provide them with the opportunity to meet and get to know people. Besides, most public places are affordable compared to other entertainment venues and are usually more spacious.

### 4. Will more people move to cities in the future?

I believe so because cities offer people better jobs and employment opportunities than rural areas. In addition, urban citizens can gain instant access to a wide range of services like healthcare and higher education. While young people could take advantage of the rapid development of urban areas, old people will be looked after better thanks to modern medical systems.

# An occasion

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe an occasion when many people were smiling

You should say:

- When it happened
- Who you were with
- What happened
- And explain why many people were smiling

### Answer

Today, I would like to share my experience of seeing many people smiling and it was the occasion of my cousin's wedding. He is not exactly **a barrel of laughs**<sup>(1)</sup> so it's rare to see him smile. Yet, that day, he was **grinning from ear to ear**<sup>(2)</sup>. The celebration was organized at the most elegant resort in the city which was beautifully **adorned with**<sup>(3)</sup> light and flowers. The **breathhtaking**<sup>(4)</sup> decoration really **blew our mind**<sup>(5)</sup>. It was such a **delightful moment**<sup>(6)</sup> since I got to meet my aunts and uncles after ages, and everyone was wearing a huge smile on their face

The wedding was carefully planned out to **cater**<sup>(7)</sup> for the needs of different guests, from food choices to beverages. The **finger-licking food**<sup>(8)</sup> was bringing a smile to every face and the wedding band got everyone out of their seats and kept them on their feet until it was time to go home. Everyone was having a good laugh. I remember seeing a girl tripping over her dress and falling so hard on the floor. She was fine but everyone **burst into laughter**<sup>(9)</sup>, so she cringed and **stormed out of the room**<sup>(10)</sup>. In addition, my cousin had also invited a famous comedian for the entertainment of the guests. He did a good job of making them laugh with his hilarious jokes. I am myself also an amateur comedian, but I have nothing on him. It was the best wedding I have ever been to.

**1. a barrel of laughs** / ə 'bærəl ɒv lɑ:fs/ (phr): một ai đó hay cười hoặc một cái gì đó thú vị

Ví dụ: *Tom is not a barrel of laughs; he is always serious with everything.*

**2. grinning from ear to ear** / 'grɪnɪŋ frɒm iə tu: iə/: cười toe toét

Ví dụ: *"We've had a fantastic response!" he said, grinning from ear to ear.*

**3. adorn with** / ə 'dɔ:n wið/: tô điểm với

Ví dụ: *The bride's hair was adorned with sparkling beads.*

**4. breathtaking** / 'breθ,teɪkɪŋ/ (adj): đẹp tuyệt vời

Ví dụ: *This summer, Sam is going to visit Bali because he was told that it is a breathtaking land.*

**5. blow someone's mind**

/bləʊ 'sʌmwʌnz maɪnd/ (idiom): khiến ai đó cảm thấy rất ấn tượng, phấn khích

Ví dụ: *The climax of the film really blew my mind.*

**6. delightful moment** / drɪ'laɪtful 'məʊmənt/: khoảnh khắc thú vị

Ví dụ: *At Tet, every family in Viet Nam has delightful moments uniting together.*

**7. cater** / 'kætə / (v): chăm sóc, cung cấp

Ví dụ: *Today's party will be catered by the most famous restaurant in the downtown.*

**8. finger-licking food** / 'fɪŋgə-'lɪkɪŋ fu:d / (idiom): rất ngon, rất tốt

Ví dụ: *A beefsteak with good dressing is always finger-licking food.*

**9. burst into laughter** / bɜ:st 'ɪntu: 'lɑ:ftə / (phr.v): cười phá lên

Ví dụ: *Everyone bursted into laughter when the teacher was telling jokes.*

**10. storm out of somewhere** / stɔ:m aʊt ɒv 'sʌmwɛə / (phr.v): rời đi khỏi một nơi nào đó khi cực kì giận dữ

Ví dụ: *He stormed out of the house, slamming the door as he went.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think people who like to smile are more friendly?

Yes, I absolutely believe so. We cannot judge people's friendliness by their facial expressions, but those who do not smile often are mostly unfriendly people. Also, I think smiling is a way to show respect for others since it is a **common courtesy**<sup>(1)</sup> and people are less willing to talk to a person with a straight face.

<sup>(1)</sup>**common courtesy** /'kɒməən 'kɜːtɪsi/: phép lịch sự thông thường

Ví dụ: *Shaking hands with someone you have just met is just common courtesy.*

### 2. Why do most people smile in photographs?

Everyone is **urged to**<sup>(2)</sup> store their happy memories, such as weddings and birthday parties, captured on film. Thus, they dress up and try their best to look **solemnly**<sup>(3)</sup> into the camera with a big smile. Besides, I guess smiling when taking photos has already become a culture in many countries. In most cultures, the photographer always asks their clients to smile by saying a popular line, "say cheese".

<sup>(2)</sup>**urge to** /ɜːdʒ tuː/: thúc giục, thuyết phục

Ví dụ: *Jessi felt an overwhelming urge to tell someone about what she had witnessed.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**solemnly** /'sɒləmli / (adv): trịnh trọng

Ví dụ: *Politicians solemnly announced that the time for economic reform had arrived.*

### 3. Do women smile more than men? Why?

Yes, I agree that women show their feelings more than men do, including crying, smiling, and any other types of emotions. There are a bunch of reasons for this, but the major one must be the fact that women tend to be more empathetic and emotional. In addition, I have to mention that it is quite hard for men to express their emotions because society will judge it as an act of **effeminate**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**effeminate** /ɪ'fɛmɪnɪt / (adj): ẻo lả, yếu đuối

Ví dụ: *In spite of his muscled body, he has a really effeminate voice.*

### 4. Do people smile more when they are younger or older?

I am not sure what is the right answer for this question, but I guess that people made more genuine smiles when they were younger. Mainly because when we didn't have to think of how to **make ends meet**<sup>(5)</sup> since our parents were the ones who took care of everything. As we get older, we have to deal with many challenges in life, so sometimes we aren't in the right mood to smile. In fact, adults like us frequently **fake a smile**<sup>(6)</sup> when we feel **dead inside**<sup>(7)</sup>.

<sup>(5)</sup>**make ends meet (idiom)**: kiếm tiền để trang trải cho cuộc sống

Ví dụ: *Liz and Nick were always out to work but they barely had enough money to make ends meet.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**fake a smile** / feɪk ə smaɪl/: gượng cười

Ví dụ: *You can fake a smile but not your true feelings.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**dead inside** / dɛd ɪn'saɪd/: trống rỗng, không cảm xúc

Ví dụ: *I was dead inside when I heard about the accident.*



# A tall building

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a tall building in your city you like or dislike

You should say:

- Where it is
- What it is used for
- What it looks like
- And explain why you like or dislike it

### Answer

I am going to talk about an iconic skyscraper located **in the heart of**<sup>(1)</sup> my city. I happened to come across this building when I was **buzzing around**<sup>(2)</sup> the city, looking for a new job. When I first saw it, it was still under construction. A few weeks ago, people held a grand opening for it. Due to its prime location and extraordinary height, the building can be easily spotted from a distance, and for now, it is the highest building in my hometown with exactly 40 floors. There are various means of transport providing direct access to this place. While most people prefer to take a bus which **drops**<sup>(3)</sup> them off right at the front gate, I myself am into driving there on my own since I hate **being packed like sardines**<sup>(4)</sup> in a bus. What tickles my fancy most is probably the **eye-catching**<sup>(5)</sup> architectural design which was truly one of a kind in my hometown. The whole building is covered by a glass façade which has surely caught a lot of people's eyes. Due to its translucence, glass in architecture generates a pleasant and roomy spatial atmosphere. It allows for both a view outward as well as inward and lends a sense of space. The building is seen as the most favorite spot for both tourists and citizens simply because of the coffee bar on the 39th floor offering panoramic views overlooking the whole city. I also **meet up**<sup>(6)</sup> with my friends there simply because it's easy to navigate the way to this place. I mean no one can miss such a gigantic and outstanding building.

**1. in the heart of:** ngay trung tâm của  
**heart** /hɑ:rt/

*Ví dụ: Supermarkets are often located in the heart of the city so that customers can go there conveniently.*

**2. buzz around** /bʌz/: chạy hồi hả vì bận rộn

*Ví dụ: I had to buzz around all day, picking up my kids and shopping for food.*

**3. drop somebody off:** thả ai xuống  
**drop** /drɒp/

*Ví dụ: The bus dropped the students right off at the school gate.*

**4. be packed like sardines (idiom):**  
chật chội, nhồi nhét

**packed** /pækt /, **sardines** /sɑ:'di:nz/

*Ví dụ: Some people hate being packed like sardines on the train.*

**5. eye-catching** /'aɪ,kætʃɪŋ/(a): bắt mắt

*Ví dụ: That eye-catching dress makes her become more confident.*

**6. meet up (with somebody)** /mi:t/: hẹn gặp

*Ví dụ: On weekends, i often meet up with old friends from high school.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What are the disadvantages of living in tall buildings?

Living in sky high buildings can be advantageous for some reasons. It's beyond dispute that people can enjoy unobstructed scenic views from their apartment, which is a great way to take their mind off work at the end of the day. Along with the views, it gives people excellent natural ventilation and fresh air, thus helping to get away from the street pollution. Moreover, high-rises are usually located in upscale neighborhoods that offer more in terms of connectivity and security.

### 2. Do you think there will be more tall buildings in the future?

I am pretty sure that in the years to come, most cities on earth will become a concrete jungle where it would be rare to catch sight of a detached or even semi-**detached house**<sup>(1)</sup>. Given the fact that our world today, particularly in developing countries, is facing a burgeoning population, soon, there will be a serious shortage of residential land. That's why the only solution would be to build more and more high rise buildings to cater for the increasing need of housing.

<sup>(1)</sup>**detached house** /dɪ'tætʃt/ /haus/: nhà biệt lập

Ví dụ: *it's more comfortable to live in a detached house than in a flat*

### 3. Why aren't there many tall buildings in the countryside?

The main reason is probably because of the **sparse**<sup>(2)</sup> population in rural areas. It's obvious that today, people tend to flock to cities in search of job opportunities, so the countryside is often less populated. This means that there is a lot of vacant land available and tall buildings would be of no use there. Similarly, enterprises are reluctant to expand their business in rural areas, so there is little need for office space.

<sup>(2)</sup>**sparse** /spɑ:s/(adj): thưa thớt

Ví dụ: *This remote village has a sparse population*

### 4. Why do some people like to live in tall buildings nowadays?

The first reason that's just popped into my mind is because of the cost. What I mean is that today, buying or renting an apartment seems to be a **budget-friendly**<sup>(3)</sup> option for most people, especially those who haven't reached middle age yet. For these people owning a single storey house would quite be **out of their reach**<sup>(4)</sup> because they haven't worked long enough to save money for such a place. Another reason is that for some people, they simply enjoy living on the ground level because they can easily save themselves from unexpected accidents such as fire or earthquake.

<sup>(3)</sup>**budget-friendly** /'bʌdʒ.ɪt/ /'frend.li/: phù hợp với túi tiền

Ví dụ: *I want to look for a budget-friendly tour for my parents.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**be out of reach**: vượt ra khỏi tầm với, khả năng

**reach** /ri:tʃ/

Ví dụ: *Buying a house right now is just out of his reach.*

# A natural talent

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a natural talent(sports, music, etc) you want to improve

You should say:

- What it is
- When you discovered it
- How you want to improve it
- And how you feel about it

### Answer

I am not a person who usually **shows off**<sup>(1)</sup> although there is nothing much that I can pride myself on. Yet, I would say that I am **adept at**<sup>(2)</sup> leading people, and that's why I was often appointed to be the leader of a group project at school. Despite **being endowed with**<sup>(3)</sup> such a talent, I think it's important to nurture and hone it if I want to use it to my advantage in my future career. I was not conscious of this innate ability until one day when lots of my classmates started **buttering me up**<sup>(4)</sup>. I had no clue what was happening and then my teacher informed us that we were going to compete in groups for the final test. That's when it hit me that I was a sought-after kind of leader to my friends, which made me so flattered. In retrospect, I did prove myself to be a reliable and competent leader who could put the whole team together to ace every test and exam.

Yet, leading others is truly a herculean task. When the team is demotivated and runs out of steam, the leader needs to keep them energized to push on. A leader is also required to notice the strengths and weaknesses of other teammates to make sure they can **turn their strong suits into good account**<sup>(5)</sup> and avoid tasks that are not to their advantage. Nevertheless, I did a pretty good job in leading my friends as I somehow managed to keep them on the right track, help the team meet deadlines and still **endeared myself to them**<sup>(6)</sup>.

1. **show off** /ʃəʊ/: khoe khoang

Ví dụ: He showed off his collection of awards to his friends, which made them all jealous.

2. **be adept at** /ə'dept/: có tài trong việc gì

Ví dụ: Some stars are pretty adept at dealing with the media.

3. **be endowed with** /ɪn'daʊd/: được phú cho điều gì

Ví dụ: Our hometown is endowed with an abundance of seafood.

4. **butter somebody up** /'bʌt.ər/: tăng bốc ai

Ví dụ: He is not a reliable person and he always butters people up when he needs their favor.

5. **turn something into good account**: dùng cái gì như lợi thế của mình  
**account** /ə'kaʊnt/

Ví dụ: Competitors should turn their own strength into good account in this contest.

6. **endear someone to someone**: khiến ai được yêu thích bởi ai

Ví dụ: Her humour has endeared her to all of the classmates.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think artists with talents should focus on their talents?

I don't think artists should concentrate on honing their talents alone because today the world of art and entertainment has become a **cut-throat**<sup>(1)</sup> place and in order to **set oneself apart from others**<sup>(2)</sup>, it requires more than just a single talent such as singing or dancing. An artist should try to become multi-talented if he wants to go a long way in his career. For example, Johnny Deep first debuted as a singer in a small band but he only **put his name on the map**<sup>(3)</sup> once he tried acting although acting was not really his talent.

<sup>(1)</sup>**cut-throat** /'kʌtθrəʊt/ (adj): khốc liệt, cam go  
Ví dụ: *Many young people have fallen prey to this cut-throat competition.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**set oneself apart from others**: trở nên khác biệt

Ví dụ: *By using his charm, John really set himself apart from other models.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**put someone's name on the map**: ghi danh, trở nên nổi tiếng

**name** /neɪm/, **map** /mæp/

Ví dụ: *It was his first single that helped to put his name on the map.*

### 2. Is it possible for us to know whether children who are 3 or 4 years old will become musicians and painters when they grow up?

In most cases, we can't. Although parents often second guess their kids' occupation in the future, there are slim odds that they will turn out to be whom their parents expect. This is simply because children at the age of 3 or 4 find everything riveting and they want to try their hand at different things. Just because they seem to be engrossed in an activity such as singing or painting doesn't mean they will stick to it when growing up. They are so fickle that they can **change their mind**<sup>(4)</sup> **in the blink of an eye**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**change** /tʃeɪndʒ/ **one's mind** / maɪnd/: thay đổi suy nghĩ

Ví dụ: *We first decided to visit some tourist destinations in the South but then changed our mind.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**in the blink of an eye**: trong nháy mắt

**blink** /blɪŋk/, **eye** /aɪ/

Ví dụ: *Her father finished painting the door in the blink of an eye.*

### 3. Why do people like to watch talent shows?

Talent shows are not really my thing, so I guess the primary reason why people enjoy them is because of the entertainment which is somehow based on reality. This means that viewers can relate a lot with the content and sometimes, they even put themselves in the participant's shoes to imagine how they feel when being so talented. Moreover, such tv programs are a huge source of inspiration for people and no one hates to be motivated in life.

### 4. Do you think it is more interesting to watch famous people's or ordinary people's shows?

Personally, I lean towards the latter. What can tickle my fancy when watching a tv program is its authenticity. This means whether people in the show are simply acting according to scripts or they can truly speak their minds. Most celebrities want to maintain a good public image so they often keep an opinion or feeling, which can be controversial, to themselves rather than express it. This helps them become a role model to many people but watching them on tv is just a waste of time because much of what they do has been carefully scripted.

# A piece of local news

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a piece of local news that people are interested in

You should say:

- What it was about
- Where you saw/heard it
- Who was involved
- And explain why people were interested in it

### Answer

Honestly speaking, I rarely read newspapers or even news online because I am always **up to my ears<sup>(1)</sup>** at work. But recently, I particularly got into keeping informed of local news because rumour has it that our neighborhood is about to go through some significant changes. One of which is the reconstruction of the local park. About 6 years ago, when the park was newly built, it was one of the main attractions in my area and a **verdant<sup>(2)</sup>** place covered with colorful flowers. I myself also paid a visit to this park on a daily basis especially in the morning with my friends. However, because of the garbage littering all over the park and the **foul-smelling<sup>(3)</sup>** lake, not many people feel like setting foot in there anymore. I think due to the poor maintenance and lack of supervision, the condition of this park has become worse. There are a number of things I could not bear when visiting this place. Off the top of my head, there are not enough bins placed at regular intervals. Some people litter everywhere and even dump waste into the lake, which leaves a negative impression on tourists. Secondly, anyone can see the **atrocious<sup>(4)</sup>** condition of the pathways. They're not well-maintained and are broken into bits and pieces. More seriously, at night due to the poor lighting system, this park is **a hotbed for<sup>(5)</sup>** petty crimes. In addition, more spending should be allocated to the installation of new safety-orientated facilities inside the park such as better lighting systems or warning signs.

**1. be up to one's ears in something (idiom):** bận tối ngày tối mặt với việc gì

**ears** /ɪəz/

*Ví dụ: Her parents are always up to their ears in work, so she has to stay with her grandparents during the day.*

**2. verdant** /'vɜː.dənt/(a): nơi có nhiều cây, thoáng mát

*Ví dụ: There is a verdant park near my house and I often go there to do exercise.*

**3. foul-smelling** /faʊl//smel.ɪŋ/(a): có mùi hôi

*Ví dụ: That foul-smelling lake has prevented people from visiting the park*

**4. atrocious** /ə'trou.ʃəs/(a): chất lượng rất kém

*Ví dụ: Conditions in this old village school were atrocious*

**5. a hotbed of** /'hɒt.bed/: tụ điểm cho

*Ví dụ: Slums are a hotbed of crimes.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do people where you live read newspapers?

Most people in my neighborhood are retirees so they have all the time in the world, and their favorite pastime is reading newspapers. In the morning, you can **catch sight of**<sup>(1)</sup> some elderly people walking to a nearby news stand and buying some newspapers. They often gather around after reading them to discuss some hot news, and more often than not, those meetings just end up to be an argument because some of them are too **swollen-headed**<sup>(2)</sup> and **narrow-minded**<sup>(3)</sup> to accept others' ideas. From time to time, I notice that some middle-aged citizens like my father also read news on the internet, probably because online news is faster and more convenient to access.

<sup>(1)</sup>**catch sight of**: bắt gặp

**catch** /kætʃ/, **sight** /saɪt/

<sup>(2)</sup>**swollen-headed** /ˌswɒl.ɪənˈhed.ɪd/(adj): ngạo mạn, kiêu căng

*Ví dụ: He is such a swollen headed leader that he turns down others' ideas and only considers his own.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**narrow-minded** /ˌnær.əʊˈmaɪn.dɪd/(adj): bảo thủ, khó chấp nhận ý kiến của người khác

*Ví dụ: There is no point in trying to persuade her because she is very narrow-minded.*

### 2. Do people prefer local or international news?

People around the globe consume all types of news, but they are most interested in news that's close to home. The reason is simply because local news can come in handy in their daily life. What I am trying to say is that being informed of what's happening everyday around them will help people to live a safer life. For example, when they are aware that a dangerous burglar is on the loose in their area, they would keep their guard up and keep an eye on every suspicious stranger lingering around their house.

### 3. Do you think it's important to have a national identity?

I do believe that everyone needs to have and maintain their national identity because it is the one thing that **speaks volumes**<sup>(4)</sup> about who they are and where they are from. Today, people seem to emphasize individualism so the best way to do this is to embrace their national identity. Plus, national identity gives a citizen a sense of belonging and unity, reminding them of their values to their very own nation as well as their responsibilities to protect and preserve it.

<sup>(4)</sup>**speak volumes** /ˈvɒl.ju:mz/: nói lên

*Ví dụ: She didn't say anything but her face spoke volumes.*

### 4. How can people develop their national identity?

I think there are plenty of ways to identify yourself with your own country, but the easiest and most common one is to learn about your culture and tradition and **pass on the knowledge gained**<sup>(5)</sup>. For example, a Vietnamese student can first widen his horizons about some cultural festivals in Viet Nam such as Hung King temple festival, and then, share the information with other students, especially foreigners. Such activity not only allows them to show pride in their own country's culture but also encourages others to do the same for their own national identity.

<sup>(5)</sup>**pass on the knowledge gained**: truyền lại kiến thức đã học được

**knowledge** /ˈnɒl.ɪdʒ/ **gained** /geɪnd/

*Ví dụ: In our culture, the elderly would pass on the knowledge gained to their children.*

# A town or city

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a town or city where you would like to live in the future

You should say:

- Where it is
- How you knew it
- What it is famous for
- And why you would like to live there

### Answer

When I saw this topic, the first place that popped into my mind was Tokyo which I visited last year. As my first trip to this **world-renowned**<sup>(1)</sup> city was beyond my expectations, I would like to live there if I have a chance to. Since a very young age, I have watched numerous Japanese animated - cartoon series, thus somehow falling in love with Japan. So last year, I **set foot in**<sup>(2)</sup> Tokyo which is the capital of Japan.

What impressed me most during that trip was that although people there tend to lead a **fast-paced life**<sup>(3)</sup> and have a **far-sighted**<sup>(4)</sup> view, they still embrace their traditional roots and place a high emphasis on cultural values. Apart from being one of the world's most populous cities, Tokyo is also home to all **cutting edge**<sup>(5)</sup> technologies, a huge animated film industry and famed for a high level of public safety. All those characteristics have really made me aspire to live once in this city.

Plus, the civility and orderliness of the locals truly took me by surprise. It is kind of the norm there that you need to line up whenever you are at a public place. Even if you are in a hurry, you still have to wait for your turn, which is a bit different from the norm in my country where people love cutting the line. I guess that not only did I fall in love with the city but also with its people.

1. **world-renowned** /ˌwɜːld.rɪˈnaʊnd/

(a): nổi tiếng trên thế giới

Ví dụ: *Michael Jackson was a world-renowned singer.*

2. **set foot in**: đặt chân đến đâu

**foot** /fʊt/

Ví dụ: *Last weekend, our family set foot in a famous pagoda in the north of Viet Nam.*

3. **a fast-paced life**: một lối sống nhanh

**fast-paced** /fɑːst/ˈpeɪst/

Ví dụ: *Most young people today lead fast-paced life.*

4. **far-sighted** /fɑːr/ˈsaɪ.tɪd/ (a): nhìn xa trông rộng

Ví dụ: *Successful people often have far-sighted views, which means that they can see opportunities that others can't.*

5. **cutting edge** /ˈkʌt.ɪŋ/ˈedʒ/ (a): tân tiến, hiện đại

Ví dụ: *Right now, Iphone 13 Promax is the most cutting-edge smartphone.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Why do more and more people live in the city?

Today, people tend to flock to urban areas mainly in search of better job opportunities. It's beyond dispute that there is a wide range of jobs that can suit anyone, whether they are college-educated or not. That is to say, even a person who just finished secondary or high school can at least **live from hand to mouth**<sup>(1)</sup> there. By contrast, the countryside appears to be much less developed, so the number of job vacancies is quite limited, making it much more challenging for people to be employed.

<sup>(1)</sup>**live from hand to mouth (idiom)**: sống chật vật, cầm chừng

Ví dụ: *Because of the pandemic, we could only live from hand to mouth with this meagre salary.*

### 2. How does this affect the environment and nature?

To begin with, air pollution is inevitable in cities as the more populated a place is, the more vehicles people use either for commuting or shopping. This undoubtedly results in increasing amounts of exhaust fumes which are responsible for contaminating the air. In addition, **municipal solid waste**<sup>(2)</sup> is also a grave concern. More people means higher consumption, but most cities are not able to deal with the rising amount of trash. As a result, some environmental problems such as water and soil pollution can be expected.

<sup>(2)</sup>**municipal solid waste** /mju:'nis.i.pəl/ /'sɒl.ɪd/ /weɪst/: chất thải rắn ở đô thị

Ví dụ: *Municipal solid waste is also a grave concern in many big cities.*

### 3. What are some factors that attract people to settle down in certain places?

**Off the top of my head**<sup>(3)</sup>, one of the key factors that influence a person to settle down in a place must be the access to good jobs. It's obvious that people like to work close to where they live and having a good job keeps people in their town. Moreover, alternative modes of transport are also worth considering when deciding whether to live in a place permanently. Sometimes, people get tired of driving on their own, probably due to traffic jams, so they may opt for trains or buses instead.

<sup>(3)</sup>**off the top of my head**: bật ra, nảy ra trong đầu

Ví dụ: *Off the top of my head, I could only think of one benefit of living in big cities.*

### 4. What are the differences between the young and old when choosing where to live?

I think they differ in the standards of their residential area. Firstly, while most youngsters are into living close to some **bustling**<sup>(3)</sup> streets or neighborhoods that are within walking distance to coffee shops and cinemas, senior citizens lean towards peaceful and quiet places. Secondly, old people may place a higher emphasis on the security and safety of their neighborhood because they have families to protect. Yet, it doesn't mean that the youth do not **give a hoot about their own safety**<sup>(4)</sup>, but it seems that some may take a risk if that place is close to their workplace.

<sup>(3)</sup>**bustling** /'bʌs.lɪŋ/(adj): nhộn nhịp

Ví dụ: *On TET, the streets become much more crowded and bustling.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**give a hoot about something**: quan tâm về hoot /hu:t/

Ví dụ: *As a kid, I didn't give a hoot about studying.*



# An environmental law

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe a law on environmental protection

You should say:

- What it is
- How you first learned about it
- Who benefits from it
- And explain how you feel about this law

### Answer

I am an **eco-friendly**<sup>(1)</sup> person so I care a great deal about the environment. I've participated in some green campaigns which were either aimed to clean beaches or to pick up litter in tourist destinations. Yet, in unity there is strength so I think it's time our whole society **joins hands**<sup>(2)</sup> to protect this planet. But to realize such an idea, the government needs to **enact**<sup>(3)</sup> new environmental laws, one of which should be the ban on the supply and use of **disposable**<sup>(4)</sup> plastics such as shopping bags. A couple years ago, I was still barely conscious of plastic effects on the natural world. Then one day, while scrolling down my Facebook newsfeed, I came across a viral picture of a turtle that died because of starving.

In fact, the number of such accidents has rocketed in the past few years as people make use of more and more plastics without proper disposal. As a result, sea turtles can mistake floating plastic garbage for food. They can choke, sustain internal injury and die - or starve by thinking they're full from eating plastic. Unfortunately, not every citizen is aware of such an issue. They just **get caught up in**<sup>(4)</sup> the rat race to climb the social or career ladder. Even if they were, they would be reluctant to give up the convenience these items offer. I am not sure how this law would be enforced but I can imagine something like if you get caught using single-use products, you may pay a fine and the police would have some kind of card to **keep track of**<sup>(5)</sup> your violation.

1. **eco-friendly** /'i:kəʊ,frend.li/(a): thân thiện với môi trường

Ví dụ: *Customers should choose eco-friendly products such as paper bags instead of single-use ones.*

2. **join hands** /dʒɔɪn/ /hændz/: kết hợp, hợp sức

Ví dụ: *Everyone should join hands to protect the environment.*

3. **enact** /ɪ'nækt/ (v): ban hành ( laws, rules..)

Ví dụ: *The government needs to enact more stricter laws to protect the environment.*

3. **disposable** /dɪ'spəʊ.zə.bəl/ = **single use** /'sɪŋ.gəl/ /ju:z/ (a): dùng một lần

Ví dụ: *Disposable products do harm to the environment because they take a long time to decompose.*

4. **get caught up in something**: dính líu, liên quan tới hoạt động nào  
**caught** /kɑ:t/

Ví dụ: *Many celebrities get caught up in scandalous affairs.*

5. **keep track of**: theo dõi  
**track** /træk/

Ví dụ: *Parents should keep track of their children's studies.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Are there laws about education in Vietnam?

I don't have a good grasp of laws in Vietnam in general, let alone those in education. Yet, one thing that just popped into my mind is laws against tutoring students at home. This means that teachers at a school are not allowed to give tuition at home simply because students may tend to ignore the knowledge gained in class and think they can learn more at their teacher's house. Plus, educators themselves will make less effort in lecturing at school than at their home because home tuition gives them much more money.

### 2. What kinds of rules do schools in Vietnam have?

The first set of rules I can think of is the dress code which indicates specifically how students are supposed to dress when they go to school. To be more specific, students are required to wear the school uniform but some may try to put their own spin on it, so regulations will keep them from standing out unnecessarily. Another kind of rule is codes of conduct which are used to keep students in line and remind them of the punishment for their **misbehavior**<sup>(1)</sup> in class.

<sup>(1)</sup>**misbehavior** /ˌmɪs.bɪˈheɪ.vjə/(n): cư xử không phải phép hoặc vi phạm quy định/luật lệ  
Ví dụ: *The school expelled him for his repeated misbehaviour.*

### 3. What can teachers do to make students obey rules?

There are several ways to convince students to follow classroom rules. Firstly, it's important to set clear goals. Knowing the expectations of their teacher gives students a clear sense of where they stand and what's expected of them. Understanding why the rules exist can connect action with consequence and can make following those rules easier. Secondly, teachers should use a reminder as sometimes rules **slip out of a student's mind**<sup>(2)</sup>. For example, if the teacher catches sight of a student chatting a bit with his classmate, she can call him out to remind the whole class of the rule agreed upon.

<sup>(2)</sup>**slip out of one's mind**: trượt ra khỏi tâm trí  
**slip** /slɪp/, **mind** /maɪnd/  
Ví dụ: *My grandmother is absent-minded now so things slip out of her mind easily.*

### 4. What should parents do to educate children about laws?

I think it's important for parents to set a good example first if they want their children to understand and comply with laws. For example, it would be confusing for a child if he is told not to run the red light while his parents break this law from time to time. Moreover, it's better to start setting rules and disciplines at home first before parents teach their kids about laws. This means that they learn to become well-**disciplined**<sup>(3)</sup> at home on a daily basis, which helps them to get into the habit of obeying rules. As they grow up, it would be easier to wrap their mind around complicated laws and observe them.

<sup>(3)</sup>**discipline** /ˈdɪs.ə.plɪn/(n) kỷ luật  
Ví dụ: *Maintaining classroom discipline is the first task of every teacher.*

# A puzzle

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a puzzle (jigsaw, crossword, etc) you have played

You should say:

- What it is like
- How easy or difficult it is
- How long it takes you to solve
- And how you feel about it

### Answer

As a child, I didn't have many friends because I was kind of shy and reserved. Plus, I was seen as a nerd in my class so not many young kids liked to hang out with me. Luckily, I still have a real friend who always **stands by my side**<sup>(1)</sup>. Actually, we are kinda **poles apart in**<sup>(2)</sup> character, but we do have many things in common, one of which is playing jigsaw puzzles. The rule itself is simple; all you have to do is assembling the oddly shaped interlocking pieces to make a complete picture.

The winner is whoever finishes the picture first. My best friend usually beats me in this game. I've gotta admit that she does **have a knack for**<sup>(3)</sup> such intellectually demanding games while I always had to **rack my brain**<sup>(4)</sup> when playing.

My best friend was the one who got me into this game. At first, I thought it was the lamest game of all time, but somehow it grew on me. Now, every time I have a lot of thoughts in my mind and want to unwind for just a while, I would ask her to play the game with me. It simply takes my mind off things. I also had this bittersweet memory with the game. Sometimes, I would bring it to school to play during break time, and my friends used to make fun of me for playing such a monotonous game. I was not hurt at all, a little bit maybe, but the bottom line is that I knew this game would do me good in many ways so I just **turned a blind eye to**<sup>(5)</sup> whatever mean things they said.

1. **stand by one's side**: ở bên cạnh ai  
**stand** /stænd/, **side** /saɪd/

Ví dụ: *My best friend always stands by my side when I go through a hard time.*

2. **be poles apart in**: là hai người đối lập ở khía cạnh nào

**poles** /pəʊlz/

Ví dụ: *My brother and I are poles apart in character so we never get along.*

3. **have a knack for**: giỏi về việc gì  
**knack** /næk/

Ví dụ: *You really have a knack for selling. You should work in business in the future.*

4. **rack one's brain**: suy nghĩ rất nhiều để làm gì

**rack** /ræk/, **brain** /breɪn/

Ví dụ: *She racked her brain to come up with a perfect lie.*

5. **turn a blind eye to**: làm ngơ việc gì  
**turn** /tɜːn/, **blind** /blaɪnd/, **eye** /aɪ/

Ví dụ: *The manager often turns a blind eye to bullying in the workplace.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Why do parents let their children play puzzles?

I guess it's because they know how much puzzles can **do wonders**<sup>(1)</sup> for their kids. From my observation, most people are fond of **jigsaw puzzles**<sup>(2)</sup> and there are 2 main reasons. First of all, children can gradually develop problem-solving skills. They may need to learn to set aside the piece they hope to put in the puzzle while searching for one that fits in the spot they need. Another benefit is that children can refine their fine motor skills and hand-eye coordination skills as they grasp pieces to put the puzzle together.

<sup>(1)</sup>**do wonder (idiom)**: có tác dụng lớn, kì diệu  
Ví dụ: *Doing exercise every day can do wonder for our health.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**jigsaw puzzle** /'dʒɪɡ.sɑ:/ /'pʌz.əl/: trò ghép hình

Ví dụ: *I think only smart children can play jigsaw puzzles well.*

### 2. What kinds of puzzles improve people's intelligence?

There are different genres of puzzles, such as crossword puzzles, word-search puzzles, number puzzles to name a few. Regardless of their form and rule, all puzzles can contribute to the improvement of our intelligence. Unlike most other games, puzzles do not intend to regale players alone but also are **geared towards challenging them**<sup>(3)</sup> and pushing them to rack their brains. That's how puzzles can give our brains a real mental workout, helping us become smarter.

<sup>(3)</sup>**gear something towards somebody/ something**: hướng cái gì đến ai/cái gì

Ví dụ: *These advertisements are geared towards a younger audience.*

### 3. Why are detective stories attractive to people?

I am a huge fan of detective stories myself so I can pretty much relate to other fans. I can say that we all tend to solve puzzles or to find a solution. That's the main reason why many people can't help themselves by **immersing themselves in detective fiction**<sup>(4)</sup>. When reading a detective story, readers can try **putting themselves in the detective's shoes**<sup>(5)</sup> to find out who is the real murderer or thief. They start collecting all clues and put them together to solve the case.

<sup>(4)</sup>**immerse oneself in sth(v)**: đắm mình

Ví dụ: *Whenever I feel stressed out, I immerse myself in some upbeat music.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**put yourself in the someone's shoes**: đặt mình vào trường hợp của ai đó

Ví dụ: *When reading books, readers often put themselves in the characters shoes to understand their feelings.*

### 4. Which do you think is better? A detective movie or its original novel?

As I was saying, the whole point of being a fan of the detective genre is to satisfy our curiosity and turn our imagination into a good account. That's why the original novel would appear more appealing to a die-hard fan like me than the movie simply because words speak volumes. Readers are more likely to relate to the victim or the detective through words which have been carefully chosen by the author. Plus, we can also read between the lines to figure out the real criminal.

# An occasion

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

**Describe an occasion when you were not allowed to use your mobile phone**

You should say:

- When it was
- Where it was
- Why you were not allowed to use your mobile phone
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

I am not proud to say this but I used to be a phone addict, which means that no matter how much I **applied myself**<sup>(1)</sup>, I couldn't ditch my phone. This entrenched habit did lead to a lot of breakdowns in the relationships with my friends and family because I became a **phubber**<sup>(2)</sup>. Then one day, I suffered from some eye disorders including blurry vision and dry, itchy eyes, and the doctor insisted that I need to keep the phone **out of my reach**<sup>(3)</sup> for at least one week. As he broke the news to me, I felt like my whole world was falling apart. I was scared that I would miss out on everything from my friends' gossip to celebrity scandals. But, I had no choice but to **grin and bear it**<sup>(4)</sup>, hoping I could recover in no time. In fact, I was not allowed to be exposed to the screen of any gadget at all, so I racked my brain to figure out how I could cheer myself up. I tried all the tips I picked up on the internet, even the cliché one like thinking about how harmful a phone can be, but none of them worked. I just miss the feeling of keeping abreast of all news and being able to reach out to any friends of mine, regardless of the time and location. It bored me to death to sit in my room all day long, having so much time on my hands. Luckily, when I was on the verge of giving up, my best friend came by to **keep me company**<sup>(5)</sup> and suggested staying with me until I could get better. Needless to say, I **was over the moon**<sup>(6)</sup> when hearing such blissful news. She did a great job in keeping me away from my phone for a whole week.

**1. apply oneself** /ə'plai/: cố hết sức

Ví dụ: *No matter how much I applied myself, I couldn't fit in there.*

**2. phubber** /'fʌb.ə/ (n): ám chỉ người ngó lơ người bên cạnh mình và chỉ để tâm đến điện thoại

Ví dụ: *Most teenagers now become a phubber, which leads to problems in their relationships.*

**3. out of one's reach** /ri:tʃ/: khỏi tầm với của ai

Ví dụ: *Buying a new house now is just out of his reach.*

**4. grin and bear it (idiom):** cố gắng chấp nhận điều gì

**grin** /grɪn/ **bear** /ber/

Ví dụ: *My parents forbade me to go to the party. I had no choice but to grin and bear it.*

**5. keep somebody company:** bầu bạn với ai

Ví dụ: *When driving over a long distance, he needs someone to keep him company.*

**6. be over the moon:** cực kỳ vui sướng

Ví dụ: *Everyone was over the moon when we could finally lift all the lockdowns.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. How do young and old people use mobile phones differently?

Their purposes for using mobile phones are definitely different. As for the elderly, most of them only take advantage of the basic functions such as calling and texting, although there are still a few people who read news on their phone. By contrast, youngsters are no stranger to smart phones in particular so they can use them for various purposes from surfing the web, shopping online to keeping in touch with friends and business partners.

### 2. What positive and negative impacts do mobile phones have on friendship?

On the one hand, mobile phones are great tools for communication, thus keeping everyone, particularly friends, closer even if they are living far away from each other. Today, people can either send instant messages or make a video call to check on their friends and **catch up with them**<sup>(1)</sup>. On the other hand, one of the grave concerns when using such gadgets is that it can **put offline friendships at stake**<sup>(2)</sup>. This is because once people are addicted to their phones and their virtual world, they tend to neglect their real life and interact less with their actual friends.

<sup>(1)</sup>**catch up with sb**: cập nhật tin tức về ai

Ví dụ: *We hadn't seen each other for a long time so when I ran into her on the street, we spent a whole afternoon catching up with each other.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**put sth at stake**: đưa vào tình thế nguy hiểm

Ví dụ: *Today, going out without wearing a mask can put your health at stake.*

### 3. Is it a waste of time to take pictures with mobile phones?

It would be time-consuming if people spent their whole days just taking pictures, but every once in a while, it wouldn't take up much time to take a photo to save the moment. Actually, what really **gets on one's nerves**<sup>(3)</sup> is the editing process after because it can take hours to finish a picture.

<sup>(3)</sup>**get on one's nerves**: khiến ai khó chịu

**nerves** /nɜːrvz/

Ví dụ: *It gets on my nerves every time he sings.*

### 4. Do you think it is necessary to have laws on the use of mobile phones?

No, such an idea sounds preposterous to me. Mobile phones are supposed to make our lives easier and more convenient, so there would be no point in adhering to all those complex laws which are annoying. In reality, people can only wrap their minds around some basic and familiar laws such as traffic laws, so I doubt they could take in anything related to mobile phones. Plus, mobile phones have proved to be nothing but a helping hand for humans, and although there are some car accidents caused by the reckless use of phones while driving, the issue is not concerning enough to make laws.

# A plan

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a plan in your life (that is not related to work or study)

You should say:

- What it is about
- Why you make it
- What you need to do first
- And explain how you would feel if it is successful

### Answer

As I am a coffee enthusiast, I've learned about coffee by myself on the internet. Recently, I've been **toying with the idea**<sup>(1)</sup> of opening a small coffeehouse of my own. As I am between jobs now and have a lot of free time, I decided to **run the idea by my parents**<sup>(3)</sup> and asked for their financial support to realize my dream. After sitting on my proposal for weeks, they finally gave into my passion and determination and promised to loan me some money. But I know my parents are not some kind of pliant parents who would go along with anything their kids say, so I asked what their deal was. It turned out that they would only give me the money if I took a professional barista course but I had no problem with that, so now I am learning and working part time at a nearby coffeehouse to gain some **hands-on experience**<sup>(4)</sup>.

I've planned out everything for my dream coffeehouse. In terms of location, it will be situated close to the city center to attract a wider range of customers. Regarding the decoration, the exterior will be covered with floral and botanical arrangements. This one of a kind decoration will help it to stand out from other cafes. For those who seek a peaceful atmosphere and a tranquil space to relax or to immerse themselves in a book, my coffeehouse will be right **up their alley**<sup>(5)</sup>. It will be totally soundproofed to block out all distracting noises around. If things go as planned, I will embark on realizing my dream by the end of this year

**1. toy with something** /tɔɪ/: cân nhắc làm gì, nhưng không nghiêm túc

Ví dụ: *She has been toying with the idea of studying abroad, but she has not even graduated yet.*

**2. think something out:** cân nhắc kỹ lưỡng việc gì

Ví dụ: *He thought out the plan before proposing it to the boss.*

**3. run something by somebody:** bàn bạc việc gì với ai

Ví dụ: *The team ran the idea by the leader before making the final decision.*

**4. hands-on experience:** kinh nghiệm thực tế

**hands-on** /ˌhændˈzɒn/, **experience** /ɪkˈspɪəri.əns/

Ví dụ: *The new manager has a lot of hands-on experience in the F&B field.*

**5. be up one's alley/street:** đúng sở thích, gu của ai đó

**up** /ʌp/, **alley** /ˈæli/, **street** /stri:t/

Ví dụ: *A teaching job would be right up her alley.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Should parents make plans for children?

I would say it depends on the character of the child. A kid who is used to being coddled by his parents may even expect them to plan out a whole life for them. This helps them feel more secure and boosts their confidence because they know their parents will not let anything go wrong in their life. However, this may not be the case for children who learn to be **self-reliant**<sup>(1)</sup> from a young age because they emphasize their own competence and opinions. This means, they feel more satisfied when parents let them **stand on their feet**<sup>(2)</sup> rather than be told what to do.

<sup>(1)</sup>**self-reliant** /ˌself.rɪˈlaɪ.ənt/ (a): tự lập, độc lập  
Ví dụ: *My mother is a self-reliant woman. She raised all of her kids by herself without her husband's help.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**stand on one's own feet (idiom)**: tự sống độc lập, không dựa dẫm ai

**stand** /stænd/, **feet** /fi:t/, **own** /əʊn/ **feet** /fi:t/  
Ví dụ: *She is used to having her parents take care of everything for her, so she can't stand on her own feet.*

### 2. When should children start to make plans for themselves?

It would be better if children learn to make plans from a young age so that it can become their **second nature**<sup>(3)</sup>. When they grow up, they will be used to planning everything ahead to make sure everything will go as planned. Such a good habit will turn them into a well-organized and **methodical**<sup>(4)</sup> person and give them more chances to make their way in life.

<sup>(3)</sup>**be second nature to somebody**: trở nên quen thuộc, như một thói quen với ai

**second** /ˈsek.ənd/, **nature** /ˈneɪ.tʃə/  
Ví dụ: *Checking emails has become my second nature ever since I got this job.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**methodical** /məˈθɒd.ɪ.kəl/: kỹ lưỡng, cẩn thận (miêu tả người)

Ví dụ: *I am a very methodical person and writes lists for everything.*

### 3. What things should be planned on a daily basis?

Daily planning is obviously a **life saver**<sup>(5)</sup> for everyone, especially those who **are always up to their ears in work**<sup>(6)</sup>, as it reminds people of what they need to get out of the way in the day. Therefore, they should write down their daily tasks such as picking up children from school or shopping for groceries in a to-do list, and their daily goals to make sure that they improve themselves day by day. A thing to bear in mind is that they should set priority for the tasks on their list so that they know which should be dealt with first.

<sup>(5)</sup>**life saver** /ˈlaɪf.seɪ.vər/ (n): người, vật cứu cánh  
Ví dụ: *When you're stuck in traffic, a mobile phone is your life saver.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**be up to one's ears in something**: rất bận rộn với việc gì

**up** /ʌp/, **ear** /ɪər/  
Ví dụ: *My father is a workaholic. He's always up to his ears in work.*



#### 4. Are plans always necessary?

I think it is because planning **keeps people on top**<sup>(7)</sup> of their work and their lives. When our daily lives are busy and multi-faceted, it can be easy to get sidetracked, or feel overwhelmed, so having a plan helps people manage time wisely to achieve their goals. Plus, people who make plans regularly can feel more confident because they already prepare themselves for uncertainty in life. There will always be a **backup plan**<sup>(8)</sup> for any unexpected scenarios when people plan things ahead.

<sup>(7)</sup> **keep somebody/something on track**: giúp cho ai/việc gì thực hiện đúng tiến độ  
**track** /træk/

Ví dụ: *I can be distracted easily so I need someone to stay by my side and keep me on the right track.*

<sup>(8)</sup> **a backup plan**: kế hoạch dự phòng

**backup** /'bæk.ʌp/, **plan** /plæn/

Ví dụ: *We should always have a backup plan just in case things don't go as planned.*

#### 5. Can people succeed without plans?

Surely they can. There have been many cases in which people didn't **set out to achieve any success themselves**<sup>(9)</sup>. For example, Johnny Depp- a **world-renowned**<sup>(10)</sup> actor was first a member of a band but one time, he did a favor of driving his friend to an audition for a part in a movie. They both ended up auditioning, and while Depp's friend didn't get the part, Depp landed his first movie role and the rest is cinematic history. It was never part of his plan to **try his hand at acting**<sup>(11)</sup>, let alone **rise to fame**<sup>(12)</sup> but after all, his life has become a roaring success.

<sup>(9)</sup> **set out to do something**: đặt mục tiêu làm gì  
Ví dụ: *They set out to discover a cure for covid-19 disease.*

<sup>(10)</sup> **world-renowned** /,wɜːld.rɪ'naʊnd/ (a): nổi tiếng trên thế giới

Ví dụ: *He is a world-renowned singer.*

<sup>(11)</sup> **try one's hand at something**: thử làm việc gì  
Ví dụ: *I am thinking about trying my hands at climbing mountains.*

<sup>(12)</sup> **rise to fame**: trở nên nổi tiếng

**rise** /raɪz/, **fame** /feɪm/ (n): danh tiếng

Ví dụ: *She rose to fame right after her debut.*

# An argument

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe an argument two of your friends had

You should say:

- When it happened
- What it was about
- How it was solved
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

Growing up in a dysfunctional family, I got into the habit of **shying away from arguments**<sup>(1)</sup> but sometimes, disagreement is inevitable. Today, I'll talk about one incident when my friends got into a heated argument that took place when we were working on a group assignment. When I was a senior, I took a course on Children Learning English and one of the assessments for this course was a presentation on how to deliver an engaging lesson to children under 5. As we were informed of such a project **on short notice**<sup>(2)</sup>, we literally worked **around the clock**<sup>(3)</sup> to meet the deadline. The real challenge was not about the time but about these two members who were equally egotistic. They kept **rowing about**<sup>(4)</sup> everything related to our presentation. The most indelible argument when two of the teammates could not see eye to eye on the structure of the presentation. Both of them were too **narrow-minded**<sup>(5)</sup> to accept the upsides of each other's ideas. Soon the verbal fight turned into a real fight so I had to jump in, sit them down and talk some sense to them. First, I asked them to admit that they were both so **self-absorbed**<sup>(6)</sup> that they put themselves before the whole team. Then, after pointing out all the pros and cons of their suggestions and showing them how we could use them both together, we were finally all **on the same page**<sup>(7)</sup>. After all, our hard work paid off. Our presentation was given the maximum score for the midterm test.

**1. shy away from something:** tránh né việc gì

Ví dụ: *My brother is so lazy that he keeps shying away from our household chores.*

**2. on short notice:** trong một khoảng thời gian ngắn

**short** /ʃɔ:rt/ **notice** /'nəʊ.tɪs/

Ví dụ: *Our grandparents informed us of their visit on short notice, so we didn't have time to clean our house.*

**3. around the clock:** cả ngày lẫn đêm

Ví dụ: *In order to meet the tight deadline, we all worked around the clock.*

**4. row about something:** tranh cãi to tiếng về việc gì

Ví dụ: *Parents often row about financial issues.*

**5. narrow-minded** /,nær.əʊ'maɪn.dɪd/ (a): bảo thủ

Ví dụ: *My brother is so narrow-minded that he never agrees with my opinions.*

**6. self-absorbed** /,self.əb'zɔ:bd/ =

**egocentric** /,i:ɡəʊ'sen.trɪk/ (a): chỉ nghĩ đến bản thân mình

Ví dụ: *It's best to shy away from self-absorbed people because they will not help you when you are in need.*

**7. be on the same page:** đồng thuận, đồng tình với nhau

**same** /seɪm/ **page** /peɪdʒ/

Ví dụ: *Everyone in the class has to be on the same page about how to decorate our classroom for this school competition.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think argument is important?

It is beyond dispute necessary. Although arguments may take up a lot of time, it allows people to spark innovative ideas to **win others over**<sup>(1)</sup>. Everyone is **swollen-headed**<sup>(2)</sup> to some extent so they tend to turn down others' ideas and defend their own at all costs. Yet, the more they talk over a problem or solution, the better they understand it, thus being able to work at their best.

<sup>(1)</sup>**win somebody over**: thuyết phục ai đồng ý với mình

Ví dụ: *This is the last chance for the candidates to win over voters.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**swollen-headed** /ˌswɒl.ənˈhed.ɪd/ (a) tự cao, tự phụ

Ví dụ: *They have done well, but it does not mean that they can be that swollen-headed.*

### 2. What do family members usually have arguments about?

Within a family, conflicts are prevalent either between parents or parents and children. In the former case, spouses may fail to **see eye to eye on topics such as parenting style or finances**<sup>(3)</sup>. For example, it is common to see a couple fighting about whether to impose ideas on their children and have everything planned ahead for them or let them decide what they want and take control of their lives. In the latter situation, parents and children fail to be on the same page when it comes to their children's lifestyle or academic performance. For instance, most parents in VN tend to prohibit their kids from early dating, which often backfires.

<sup>(3)</sup>**see eye to eye with somebody on something**: đồng ý với ai việc gì

**see** /si:/ **eye** /ai/

Ví dụ: *Teammates should learn to see eye to eye with one another instead of arguing all the time.*

### 3. Is it easier for you to have arguments with your family or with your friends?

I always try to **be on good terms with my friends**<sup>(5)</sup> so I shy away from any arguments with them. That's why it's definitely easier for me to fall out with my parents instead. No matter how angry we are, we all finally have to **bury the hatchet**<sup>(6)</sup> at the end of the day because it would be awkward to dine together when everyone **has a face like thunder**<sup>(7)</sup>. Sometimes, I just pretend to go along with my parents so that we can stop rowing.

<sup>(5)</sup>**be on good terms with somebody**: có mối quan hệ tốt với ai

**terms** /tɜːmz/

Ví dụ: *My best friend and I often row about tiny things but we are still on good terms now.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**bury the hatchet (idiom)**: bỏ qua những cãi vã, thù hận, làm lành

**bury** /ˈber.i/, **hatchet** /ˈhætʃ.ɪt/

Ví dụ: *After avoiding each other for weeks, we finally agreed to let things go and bury the hatchet.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**have a face like thunder (idiom)**: nổi giận

**thunder** /ˈθʌn.dər/

Ví dụ: *Someone stole her phone and now she's having a face like thunder.*

#### 4. Do you think people should change the way they think when having arguments?

I think it is necessary to **keep a more open mind**<sup>(9)</sup> during a dispute. If everyone is too **fixated on their own ideas**<sup>(8)</sup>, their argument may take up a lot of time before reaching an agreement. This may reduce their productivity at work and cause them to have to work around the clock to meet deadlines. By contrast, when looking at things from a different perspective, people can consider various aspects of a problem, thus being able to make a wise and informed decision quickly.

<sup>(8)</sup> **fixate on something** /fik'seɪt/: mãi chỉ nghĩ về điều gì đó

Ví dụ: *We should not fixate on our own flaw, but we should try to find ways to improve it.*

<sup>(9)</sup> **keep/have an open mind**: cởi mở, chấp nhận những ý kiến mới

**open** /'əʊ.pən/ **mind** /maɪnd/

Ví dụ: *As our society is more and more developing, people start to have an open mind about LGBTQ.*

# Sharing something

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you shared something with others (or another person)

You should say:

- What you shared
- Who you shared it with
- Why you shared it
- And explain how you felt about sharing it

### Answer

I am going to talk about the time when I shared some thoughts with my sister. A few years ago, I found myself **at a crossroads**<sup>(1)</sup> where I had to choose between continuing to study abroad for a master's degree or working **a nine-to-five job**<sup>(2)</sup> with my bachelor's degree. I **was in two minds**<sup>(3)</sup> and really needed her help to make up my mind. On receiving my question, she talked to me a lot to find out what my true ambition was. I totally poured my heart out to her. I told her all of my feelings, my fears and hopes for the future. After asking me endless questions to make sure that I was ready for this new challenge, she talked me into pursuing a Master's degree instead of working early. Of course, I did not just simply go along with her advice. I pondered for days before I finally settled on the seemingly more promising option which was studying abroad. I believe that a master's degree can open the door to a more rewarding career path which offers advanced opportunities and obviously a lucrative income. Although taking a master's degree is by no means an easy task, as long as I **apply myself**<sup>(4)</sup> and spare no effort, my hard work would pay off after all.

**1. at a crossroads** /'krɒs.rəʊdz/: đến bước ngoặt quyết định

*Ví dụ: I was at a crossroads where I need to choose between start working early or going on to university.*

**2. a nine-to-five job:** công việc làm 8 tiếng một ngày

*Ví dụ: Many young people feel satisfied with their nine-to-five jobs because of the stable income.*

**3. be in two minds (a):** lưỡng lự

*Ví dụ: He was in two minds whether to learn English by himself or at a language centre.*

**4. apply oneself** /ə'plai/: nỗ lực hết sức

*Ví dụ: Much as I applied myself, I still failed the driving test.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you like to share?

Of course I do, I am not some kind of **self-serving**<sup>(1)</sup> person who only **acts in their best interest**<sup>(2)</sup>. Since I was young, my parents have always taught me to share things with my cousins and my friends. Now as a grown-up, I often donate money or old clothes and books to charitable organizations. As long as it's within my reach, I am willing to share anything to help others. Yet, I always bear in mind that my personal information should only be kept to myself because today, many frauds can use our data for illegal purposes.

<sup>(1)</sup>**self-serving** /ˌselfˈsɜːvɪŋ/ (a) ích kỷ, chỉ làm việc lợi cho bản thân

Ví dụ: *It is believed that businessmen are only self-serving people.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**act in one's best interest**: làm việc gì có lợi cho bản thân

**act** /ækt/ **best** /best/ **interest** /ˈɪn.trəst/

Ví dụ: *It seems as if he was helping you, but he was actually acting in his best interest.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**keep something to oneself**: không chia sẻ việc gì với ai

Ví dụ: *I am not good with secrets. I mean that I can't keep things to myself.*

### 2. What are the consequences if children don't like to share?

If a child does not learn to share, his selfishness will gradually turn him into a self-absorbed person who no one likes to hang out with. As a toddler, the consequences may not be too severe. For example, a selfish kid who does not share toys with other friends probably ends up playing by himself, which is totally acceptable at that age. Yet, once children start going to school, this may be more concerning because they may not be able to fit in at school and become isolated. Even worse, they fail to participate in group activities which require the skill of sharing ideas, and this could lead to poor performance in class.

### 3. How do you feel about sharing accommodation with others on campus?

Such an idea kind of **tickles my fancy**<sup>(4)</sup>. I would be thrilled to have a roommate because we can help each other a lot. For example, when one of us comes down with a fever, the other can take care of the sick one by picking up medicine and cooking delicious meals. Plus, it would be more economical to share housing with someone as we can split utility bills and the rent. We are not able to earn money on our own yet so a **penny saved is a penny earned**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(4)</sup>**tickle one's fancy**: khiến ai cảm thấy hứng thú, yêu thích

**tickle** /ˈtɪk.əl/, **fancy** /ˈfæn.si/

Ví dụ: *Just lying on my bed and binge-watching series on Netflix can tickle my fancy.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**a penny saved is a penny earned (idiom)**: được đồng nào thì tốt đồng nấy

**penny** /ˈpen.i/ **saved** /seɪvd/ **earned** /ɜːnzd/

Ví dụ: *Even if you are stinking rich, you should learn to use money wisely. A penny saved is a penny earned.*

### 4. How could parents and teachers teach young children to share?

There are several ways for parents to teach kids how to share, but the most effective and easiest way is to practice sharing themselves first. Children always look up to their parents and imitate them. Therefore, when a father or mother models good sharing and turn-taking in their family, it gives children a great example to follow. Another way is to point out good sharing in other kids so that the child may feel a bit jealous and try to mimic his friends' good behavior.

# Helping a friend

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you helped a friend

You should say:

- When it was
- How you helped him/her
- Why you helped him/her
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

I will talk about the time when I lent my best friend some of my clothes so that she could leave a good impression at a meeting with some financial investors, who would decide whether or not to invest money in her start-up. As her project was related to fashion, I had to **rack my brain**<sup>(1)</sup> to figure out the best outfit that made her look like a well-dressed person. Honestly speaking, I **am a slave to fashion**<sup>(2)</sup> so I have bought various kinds of clothes from dresses, miniskirts to trousers, blazers and so on, not to mention other accessories. After hours digging into my closet, we could finally settle on an elegant business suit. Suits never **go out of fashion**<sup>(3)</sup> and also denote a professional style of dress that appears smart and sophisticated. **To top off the outfit**<sup>(4)</sup>, I chose a pair of threader earrings which look basic yet chic. I felt like I was one of those stylists who was hired to dress a celebrity when they go to a social event. She couldn't stop **grinning from ear to ear**<sup>(5)</sup> with her new look. Luckily, the meeting went pretty well and she finally closed the deal with those investors. To return the favor, she bought me a gold bracelet which was totally up my alley.

**1. rack one's brain (idiom):** suy nghĩ  
cật lực

**rack** /ræk/ **brain** /breɪn/

*Ví dụ: I truly racked my brain to think of a solution to this situation*

**2. be a slave to something (idiom):**  
chịu ảnh hưởng nhiều bởi việc gì

*Ví dụ: She spent all of her money on clothes because she is a slave to fashion.*

**3. go out of fashion:** lỗi thời

*Ví dụ: This kind of skirt will never go out of fashion*

**4. top off something:** hoàn thiện cái gì

*Ví dụ: an elegant blazer would top off this outfit*

**5. grin from ear to ear:** trông cực kì vui vẻ, hạnh phúc

**grin** /grɪn/ **ear** /ɪər/

*Ví dụ: Her parents grinned from ear to ear when seeing their daughter in the wedding dress.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. How do people usually help each other?

People can give each other a helping hand in two ways, including emotional and material support. The former kind of help usually **comes in handy**<sup>(1)</sup> when someone is in trouble and turns to friends or family members for some sound advice. Sometimes, it is simply **a pat on the back**<sup>(2)</sup> that can emotionally help a person overcome obstacles in life. While emotional support can come from anyone whether they are close to the person asking for help or not, material support, such as a loan, is something only best friends and family members like our parents can give. This is simply because, when it comes to money, people need trust more than just kindness to help someone out.

<sup>(1)</sup>**come in handy**: trở nên có ích

Ví dụ: *A flashlight may come in handy when there is a blackout.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**a pat on the back**: sự khen ngợi

Ví dụ: *The teacher gave her student a pat on the back as he bravely saved his friend from choking.*

### 2. How is online help different from real-life help?

The key difference here is probably how it can actually affect people's lives. Online support is **not a patch on**<sup>(3)</sup> offline help because it can have a more profound impact on our lives. For example, today, young people prefer making friends on online platforms such as Facebook or Instagram. Yet, when they go through a hard time and need help from others, compared to those messages checking on them, it would be more helpful to have a friend come over and give them what they need. This is simply because **actions speak louder than words**<sup>(4)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**not be a patch on something**: không tốt, không sánh bằng cái gì

Ví dụ: *Many people argue that a Samsung phone is not a patch on an Iphone.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**actions speak louder than words**: hành động có ý nghĩa hơn lời nói

**actions** /'æk.fəns/, **louder** /laʊdər/, **words** /wɜːdz/, **speak** /spiːk/

Ví dụ: *Don't fall for his sweet words. Remember that actions speak louder than words.*

### 3. Should schools be responsible for teaching students how to cooperate?

I think they should because other than schools, I can't think of any other place that can provide children with appropriate support to learn to become a team player. At school, when children work together in small groups, they can **turn their strengths to good account**<sup>(6)</sup> by sharing knowledge and experience with teammates, and at the same time, they get to improve their weaknesses when learning from others. Schools can incorporate more group or pair activities into their curriculum so that not only can students enrich their knowledge but also develop their **interpersonal skills**<sup>(5)</sup> when learning at school.

<sup>(5)</sup>**interpersonal skills** /ˌɪn.tə'pɜː.sən.əl/ /skɪlz/: kỹ năng xã hội

Ví dụ: *Young people today lack a lot of interpersonal skills, thus not being able to succeed in this competitive world.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**turn something to good account**: sử dụng cái gì để đem lại lợi ích

**turn** /tɜːn/ **good** /ɡʊd/ **account** /ə'kaʊnt/

Ví dụ: *He turned his negotiating skills to good account in this afternoon's meeting.*



#### 4. What are the differences between help from friends and help from family?

More often than not, there are **strings attached**<sup>(7)</sup> when you get help from a friend whereas it is not the case in a family. This means that, when you ask for a favor from your friend, you are bound to return it one way or another, but family members never ask you to help them back just because you owe them something. This is especially true when it comes to parents. They are always willing to give their children whatever they need without expecting anything in return. I guess that's why people say **blood is thicker than water**<sup>(8)</sup>.

<sup>(7)</sup>**strings attached** /striŋz/ /ə'tætʃt/: sự ràng buộc

*Ví dụ: Most of these favors come with strings attached, which means you have to return the favor in some way.*

<sup>(8)</sup> **blood is thicker than water**: một giọt máu đào hơn ao nước lã

**blood** /blʌd/, **thicker** /θɪkər/ **water** /'wɑ:tə/  
*Ví dụ: Because blood is thicker than water, parents care about their own children much more than other poor kids that they may run into.*

# A person

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe someone who is older than you that you admire

You should say:

- Who this person is
- How you knew this person
- What kinds of things you like to do together
- And explain how you feel about this person

### Answer

Well, the first person that **popped into my mind**<sup>(1)</sup> is my grandmother. Despite being in her seventies, she hasn't shown any sign of dementia yet. Throughout my life, she has always been a major influence on me. Not only is she a **good listener**<sup>(2)</sup> who I can **confide in**<sup>(3)</sup>, but also my biggest support system as whenever I am in trouble, I turn to her for help and she would give me a lot of **pep talks**<sup>(4)</sup> and sound advice. I look up to her because she is the most self-sacrificing woman I have ever known. She has devoted her entire life to bringing up her kids without a husband. There have been a lot of ups and downs during her lifetime, but never does she give up on her children. My dad once told me that after his father- my grandfather- **ran off with some strange woman**<sup>(5)</sup>, she shouldered the financial burden on her own without any complaints. Apart from her day job as a teacher, she managed to **run a side hustle**<sup>(6)</sup> business at night which was selling street food. That was how she **made ends meet**<sup>(7)</sup> and paid for her children's college education expenses. She sets a good example for her children and grandkids and now, even when she has retired from work, she still gives back to the community by doing charity.

1. **pop into one's mind**: chợt nghĩ đến  
**pop** /pɒp/ **mind** /maɪnd/

Ví dụ: When you say "bread and butter",  
BTS is the name that popped into my mind.

2. **a good listener**: người biết lắng nghe

**good** /ɡʊd/ **listener** /ˈlɪs.ən/

Ví dụ: My best friend is such a good listener that she can hear my stories all day long without any complaint.

3. **confide in somebody**: tâm sự với ai  
Ví dụ: Sometimes, when we go through a hard time, we need to find someone to confide in.

4. **pep talks**: những lời nói cổ vũ tinh thần

**pep** /pep/ **talks** /tɔːks/

Ví dụ: I really need some pep talks to motivate me right now.

5. **run off with somebody**: bỏ đi, bỏ trốn với ai

Ví dụ: As her parents were not pleased with her boyfriend, she ran off with him and got married secretly.

6. **run a side-hustle**: làm nghề tay trái  
**run** /rʌn/ **side-hustle** /ˈsaɪd ˌhʌs.əl/

Ví dụ: Apart from working as a teacher in the day, I also run a side hustle which is selling bubble tea at night.

7. **make ends meet**: trang trải cuộc sống

**ends** /endz/ **meet** /mi:t/

Ví dụ: She worked 3 jobs at the same time to make ends meet.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What can young and old people learn from each other?

Older adults can be great role models for children and teach them right from wrong. Without enough life experience, it's hard for them to see things in black and white, so it will **do them good**<sup>(1)</sup> to learn from **a man of the world**<sup>(2)</sup>. Meanwhile, older adults can also benefit from their interactions with the youth. They too can learn new skills, like technology, and often feel rejuvenated and energized after spending time with young ones.

<sup>(1)</sup>**do somebody good**: giúp ích, có lợi cho ai  
Ví dụ: *It will do children good if they learn English from a young age.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**a man of the world (idiom)**: người có nhiều kinh nghiệm trong cuộc sống  
**man** /mæn/ **world** /wɜːld/  
Ví dụ: *My father is a man of the world as he has overcome many challenges in his life.*

### 2. Has old people's quality of life improved when compared to the past?

Thanks to advancements in technology, our quality of life has improved **by leaps and bounds**<sup>(3)</sup> for the past few years. It's obvious that there has been **a step forward**<sup>(4)</sup> in the way we communicate as today, people can make use of modern gadgets such as smartphones or tablets for interaction. For example, while in the past, it took people a lot of time to exchange information by post, today, an email can be sent and received **in the blink of an eye**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(3)</sup>**by leaps and bounds (idiom)**: rất nhanh chóng

**leap** /li:p/, **bounds** /baʊndz/

Ví dụ: *My speaking skill has improved by leaps and bounds since I took a course at ZIM Academy*

<sup>(4)</sup>**a step forward**: sự tiến bộ, cải thiện

**step** /step/ **forward** /'fɔːrwəd/

Ví dụ: *It's such a step forward that I could watch movies without looking at the subtitles now.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**in the blink of an eye (idiom)**: trong nháy mắt, nhanh chóng

**blink** /blɪŋk/ **eye** /aɪ/

Ví dụ: *My little niece finished a bucket of KFC chicken in the blink of an eye.*

### 3. Why is there a generation gap between the young and the old?

Generation gaps are simply caused by age and the situation of the world at the time one generation has grown up. When the older generation moves into a new era, it's usually hard for them to adjust themselves to new surroundings and environments or to get along with the youth at that time. For example, in Viet Nam, many old seniors are too **conservative**<sup>(6)</sup> to accept the fact that children today are allowed to **speak their mind**<sup>(7)</sup> even if it is against their parents' opinion.

<sup>(6)</sup>**conservative** /kən'sɜːvətɪv/ (a): bảo thủ

Ví dụ: *Old people tend to be more conservative about anything new.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**speak one's mind**: nói lên ý kiến của bản thân

Ví dụ: *You are such a coward that you never spoke your mind. Instead, you just went along with other people.*

#### 4. What do old people usually do in their daily life?

In most cases, old people are retirees but while they **have all the time in the world**<sup>(8)</sup>, there are not many activities for them to do. As I see it, they often stay at home, take care of their grandchildren to kill time. Moreover, those who are still in robust health may want to give back to the community by participating in some voluntary work in their locality. For example, they can work at a **soup kitchen**<sup>(9)</sup> every day to give out free food to poor or sick people.

<sup>(8)</sup> **have all the time in the world (idiom)**: có rất nhiều thời gian rảnh

**time** /taɪm/ **world** /wɜːld/

*Ví dụ: Due to the pandemic and lockdowns, students have all the time in the world to relax at home.*

<sup>(9)</sup> **soup kitchen** /'su:p ˌkɪtʃ.ən/(n): bếp ăn từ thiện

*Ví dụ: On weekends, my mother and I go to a soup kitchen to cook food for poor people.*

# A quiet place

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a quiet place you like to spend your time in

You should say:

- Where it is
- How you knew it
- How often you go there
- What you do there
- And explain why you like the place

### Answer

As I am a senior now, I am always **snowed under with**<sup>(1)</sup> my workload piling up day after day. From time to time, when I **feel dead on my feet**<sup>(2)</sup>, I will go to this coffee shop which is my favorite hideaway to **blow off some steam**<sup>(3)</sup> and recharge my batteries. It is tucked away inside a small alley so not many people know about this place, which actually makes it my favorite. Unlike other places which are always **jam-packed**<sup>(4)</sup>, this cafe is so deserted that sometimes I wonder how they can maintain their business.

The reason why this coffeehouse is right up my alley is because of its quietness. I can immerse myself in reading a gripping novel without any noisy distractions and I wouldn't worry about embarrassing myself if I express my emotion too much. I mean, I get into the habit of bursting out laughing or crying when reading, so there would be no one around to laugh at me. There have been several times when I spent the whole day there, just reading or **binge-watching movies**<sup>(5)</sup> on my laptop. This place makes me feel even more comfortable than at my own house. Besides, I really love their drinks. There is a variety of beverages from coffee, smoothies to fruit juice to name a few, and as I have a sweet tooth, I can't help myself from trying all of their delicious cakes.

**1. be snowed under with (idiom):** quá bận rộn với việc gì

Ví dụ: *As a senior, I am always snowed under with my workload piling up day after day.*

**2. be dead on one's feet (idiom):** cực kì mệt mỏi.

**dead** /ded/ **feet** /fi:t/

Ví dụ: *when I feel dead on my feet, I will listen to some upbeat music.*

**3. blow off some steam:** thư giãn

**blow** /bləʊ/ **steam** /sti:m/

Ví dụ: *My dad often plays tennis to blow off some steam*

**4. jam-packed** /ˌdʒæmˈpækt/: cực kì đông đúc

Ví dụ: *On holiday, the mall is jam-packed.*

**5. binge-watch movies:** cà phê phim

**binge-watch** /ˈbɪndʒ ˌwɒtʃ/ **movies** /ˈmuːvɪz/

Ví dụ: *On weekends, my friends and I would binge-watch movies all day.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Is it hard to find quiet places in cities?

I am afraid it would be impossible. In big cities, noise pollution has become more and more serious because of the increasing number of vehicles on the street and various entertainment activities such as karaoke. That's why citizens sometimes take a few days off work and travel somewhere more **secluded**<sup>(1)</sup> to steer clear of the urban noise. As tourist spots are also jam-packed, most people would choose somewhere **off the beaten track**<sup>(2)</sup> or simply visit the countryside.

<sup>(1)</sup>**secluded** /sɪ'kluː.dɪd/ (a): vắng vẻ

Ví dụ: *It's better to visit somewhere secluded so that we don't have to be packed with other tourists.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**off the beaten track** (a): ít ai biết đến

**beaten** /'biː.tən/, **track** /træk/

Ví dụ: *The farmhouse we visited was truly off the beaten track. Only a few people live in the surrounding area.*

### 2. Why is it quieter in the countryside?

It's mainly because there is less traffic and fewer entertainment facilities in rural areas. Rural people often travel by foot because the town is usually small and every place is **within walking distance**<sup>(3)</sup>. Of course, many still prefer commuting to work by their motorbike, but the countryside is less populous so the traffic noise is not that concerning. Plus, it's rare to see a nightclub or a bar in such areas, and that's why people can enjoy a quiet and peaceful environment.

<sup>(3)</sup>**within walking distance** (a): rất gần

**within** /wɪ'ðɪn/, **walking** /'wɔː.kɪŋ/, **distance** /'dɪs.təns/

Ví dụ: *I walk to school every day because it is within walking distance.*

### 3. Why do people go to quiet places?

As I see it, people tend to avoid noisy places when they need to fully focus on their work because noise is distracting and can reduce their work productivity. Another case is when people can no longer stand being **bombarded with loud noises around them**<sup>(4)</sup>. This damages not only their hearing but also their mental health. It really **gets on people's nerves**<sup>(5)</sup> when they constantly hear things, especially background noise such as a phone ringing and notifications.

<sup>(4)</sup> **bombard somebody with something**: tấn công ai với cái gì (theo nghĩa bóng)

**bombard** /bɒm'bə:d/

Ví dụ: *We are constantly bombarded with ads every time we surf the web.*

<sup>(5)</sup> **get on one's nerves** (idiom): khiến ai khó chịu, bực mình

**nerve** /nɜːv/

Ví dụ: *It gets on my nerves whenever I have to babysit a child.*

#### 4. Compared with young people, do old people prefer to live in quiet places?

It's definitely so. I guess since old people have lived much longer than the youth, they must **have had their fair share of daily noises**<sup>(4)</sup>, so it makes more sense why they appreciate the quietness more than the young generation. Plus, as people age, their ears and brain become more sensitive to sound, and years of **wear and tear**<sup>(5)</sup> start to **chip away at**<sup>(6)</sup> their ability to hear clearly. That's why living in quiet places is also a way for old people to protect their hearing.

<sup>(4)</sup> **have one's fair share of something**: đã chịu đựng quá đủ cái gì

**fair** /feər/ **share** /ʃer/

Ví dụ: *I had my fair share of tragedies in my life*

<sup>(5)</sup> **wear and tear (n)**: sự hao mòn khi sử dụng một thời gian

**wear** /weər/, **tear** /teər/

Ví dụ: *Poor quality products wouldn't last for long with normal wear and tear.*

<sup>(6)</sup> **chip away at**: làm cho cái gì trở nên yếu đi

Ví dụ: *Public criticisms really chipped away at her confidence.*

# A company

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a company where you work that employs a lot of people

You should say:

- What it does
- How many people it employs
- What kind of people work there
- How you feel about it

### Answer

For the past few years, thanks to government support, the number of businesses has mushroomed in my city. Yet, only some of them can thrive and turn into **a roaring success**<sup>(1)</sup>. Today, I will talk about a large-scale insurance company that has provided numerous job opportunities for local people. Established in 2000, the business has expanded a great deal and opened many branches all over the country, but the headquarters is still located in my city. This company recruits people **on their merits**<sup>(2)</sup> so no applicant can **leverage their social networks**<sup>(4)</sup> to get a job there. That makes the company a worthwhile place to work and to devote to. Another reason why local people are striving to be recruited there is because of their flexible schedules. Like most other large insurance companies, this one also offers 24-hour call center service, which allows employees to have flexible schedules. Employees can request to work a shift that is preferable to them. Plus, some customer-based roles are more likely to work from home since they only require a phone and computer to complete their work. Therefore, employees can save money spent on gas, have more control over their work schedule and an improved work-life balance. Although the number of staff is staggering, people seem to get on well and always give others a hand when they are in need. My sister is also working there so she often **raves about the company**<sup>(4)</sup>.

1. **a roaring success (n)**: thành công vang dội

**roaring** /'rɔɪ.ɪŋ/, **success** /sək'ses/

Ví dụ: *It's such a roaring success that we were finally able to develop vaccines against coronavirus.*

2. **on one's merits**: dựa vào năng lực của một người

Ví dụ: *The recruiters only consider applicant on their merits.*

3. **rave about something** /reɪv/: khen ngợi

Ví dụ: *She can't stop raving about her newly bought Iphone.*

4. **leverage something** /'li:vərɪdʒ/: tận dụng cái vốn có để đem lại lợi ích

Ví dụ: *You can easily find a job by leveraging your network of friends.*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Should big companies be punished more seriously if they break the law?

I don't think that's a good idea. We are living in an **egalitarian society**<sup>(1)</sup>, so everyone should be treated in the same way as others, especially when it comes to laws. If we enact laws that penalize big corporations more seriously, they would just find a way to commit unlawful acts **in the name of a smaller company**<sup>(2)</sup>. As a result, new legislation only costs more time and money but doesn't help deter whether big or small businesses from breaking the law.

<sup>(1)</sup>**an egalitarian society**: xã hội bình đẳng, mọi người có quyền và cơ hội giống nhau

**egalitarian** /iˌɡæl.ɪˈteəri.ən/ **society** /səˈsaɪ.ə.ti/  
Ví dụ: *In an egalitarian society, everyone is treated equally.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**in the name of somebody/something**: dưới danh nghĩa của ai/cái gì

Ví dụ: *The daughter donated all of her money in the name of her mother as a way to commemorate her.*

### 2. Should big companies donate more to charities?

I think they should because they have huge human and financial resources that can truly **make a world of difference**<sup>(3)</sup> to the lives of **impoverished**<sup>(4)</sup> people. Every year, they can generate billion-dollar revenue so giving a little of it back to the community would not dip much into their profits. Yet, such a donation could help a large number of people in need. For example, during the covid-19 pandemic, some major corporations in VietNam such as Dai nam Corp have contributed to buying and providing oxygen tanks for numerous patients, which really saved a lot of lives.

<sup>(3)</sup>**make a world of difference (idiom)**: có ảnh hưởng, tác động lớn, cải thiện

**world** /wɜːld/ **difference** /ˈdɪf.ə.əns/

Ví dụ: *Just simply planting some trees at home can make a world of difference to our air quality.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**impoverished** /ɪmˈpɒv.ər.ɪʃt/(a): nghèo nàn

Ví dụ: *That billionaire actually come from an impoverished family.*

### 3. What are the good things about working for a big company?

One of the greatest perks of working for a corporation is career development and opportunities. Thanks to the breadth of roles available in large corporations, employees are more likely to make sideways moves and try different roles, as well as having more opportunity for promotion thanks to the volume of roles. Another advantage is stability. While any company can find themselves on the wrong side of the economy, large companies tend to be stable. The odds are pretty good that employees won't be put out of work one morning.

### 4. What are the differences between big companies and small companies?

The first difference is that small companies often focus on a **niche market**<sup>(5)</sup>, while larger companies tend to offer more products and services to a wider variety of consumers. A small company with only a few employees might be able to make enough money to survive by selling a single product or service in a very specific market. As companies grow, they tend to **branch out into new markets**<sup>(6)</sup> to increase sales and hire more employees. Another difference is salary. People working for a big corporation can earn a lucrative income and enjoy other perks such as private healthcare and vacation plans

<sup>(5)</sup>**niche market** /ˈniːʃ.mɑː.kɪt/: thị trường ngách  
Ví dụ: *The niche market of Vingroup's electric cars is Asian countries.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**branch out into something**: bắt đầu chuyển hướng sang làm gì khác

**branch** /bræntʃ/

Ví dụ: *This designer has recently branched out into children's wear.*

# A movie

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe a movie that you like

You should say:

- When you watched it
- Where you watched it
- What it was about
- And explain why you like it

### Answer

When I saw this topic, the first movie that popped into my mind was 2017 Beauty and the Beast which is actually the remake of the original computer- animated film. I've always preferred something sentimental, **light-hearted**<sup>(1)</sup>, yet meaningful and this movie was right up my alley., I'm a big fan of Emma Watson and I remember I **was thrilled to bits with the news**<sup>(2)</sup> that Emma was going to star as Belle – the female lead of the film.

Speaking a little bit of the plot, the movie is about the true love between a special girl with peerless beauty named Belle and a hideous beast who used to be a handsome prince, but, you know, because of his arrogance and vanity, he and all of the people in his castle were punished by an enchantress who cast a very powerful evil spell on him to turn him into a beast and the people in his castle into living objects. She gives him an enchanted rose and she says if he couldn't learn to love a girl and earn her true love in return until the last petal falls, he would never go back to the human form. It has a happy ending, but there were so many heart-breaking scenes that I **cried my eyes out**<sup>(3)</sup> in the cinema.

**1. light-hearted** /ˌlaɪtˈhɑːtɪd/(a): vui tươi, không căng thẳng

Ví dụ: *Doraemon is a light-hearted cartoon series for children.*

**2. be thrilled to bits with something:**

cực kì vui mừng, hài lòng

**thrilled** /θrɪld/, **bit** /bɪt/

Ví dụ: *My parents were thrilled to bits with my excellent results at the end of the school year.*

**3. cry one's eyes out:** khóc nức nở

**cry** /kraɪ/ , **eye** /aɪ/

Ví dụ: *My little sister cried her eyes out when her puppy died.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Are films a waste of money?

Generally speaking, movies are not a **money-waster**<sup>(1)</sup> because they are a great **stress-buster**<sup>(2)</sup>. Our lives are becoming more and more hectic and everyone tends to **bury themselves in work until**<sup>(3)</sup> they're burned out and that's when movies come in handy. They can **kick back**<sup>(4)</sup> on a Sunday afternoon after a long week and pop on an Adam Sandler movie - or any other kind of film for that matter. Plus, movies can help people learn different languages effectively as they are exposed to how a foreign language is actually used in daily conversations.

<sup>(1)</sup>**money-waster (n)**: sự lãng phí tiền bạc

**money** /'mʌn.i/ **waster** /'weɪ.stər/

Ví dụ: *Movies are not a money-waster because they are a great stress-buster.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**stress-buster** /'stres ,bʌs.tər/(n) cách giải stress

Ví dụ: *Music is a great stress-buster*

<sup>(3)</sup>**bury oneself in something**: chôn vùi bản thân vào việc gì

**bury** /'ber.i/

Ví dụ: *A workaholic is someone who enjoys burying himself in work.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**kick back**: ngừng làm việc và thư giãn

**kick** /kɪk/

Ví dụ: *At the weekend, I pop some popcorn, put on a movie and kick back.*

### 2. Are movie stars important to a movie?

I think it depends on the movie genre. To many, saying that it's a romantic comedy or a psychological horror movie will be appealing enough. But some films cannot rely simply on their genre classification- even those within well-defined genres need to stand out. This is where star power comes in. A famous cast would build the public hype, attracting **moviegoers**<sup>(5)</sup> to check out the new movie.

<sup>(5)</sup>**moviegoer** /'muː.vi.gəʊ.ər/: người đi xem phim tại rạp

Ví dụ: *As a moviegoer, I find it more interesting watching movies at a theatre than at home.*

### 3. Are foreign movies popular in Vietnam?

As I see it, most Vietnamese moviegoers **have a soft spot for imported films**<sup>(6)</sup>. I guess this is simply because these films have a compelling plot and innovative ideas that tickle people's fancy. By contrast, Vietnamese script writers seem to have run out of ideas so the audience are now fed up with their movies.

<sup>(6)</sup>**have a soft spot for something/someone**: đặc biệt thích cái gì/ai

**soft** /sɒft/ , **spot** /spɔ:t/

Ví dụ: *I have soft spot for adorable pink items so I have a whole collection of pink accessories at home.*

### 4. Is it important that a country has its own movies?

Obviously, it is necessary for each country to produce their own movies because they are the reflection of its own society. They can help citizens to better understand their lives, the lives of those around them and even how their society and culture operate. Today, because of globalization, people tend to lean towards foreign films, so if a country stops featuring its own lifestyles and cultures in movies, the so-called national identity will be at stake.

# An art activity

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe an art or craft activity (e.g. painting, woodwork, etc.) that you had (at school)

You should say:

- What you made
- How you made it
- What it looked like
- And how you felt about the activity

### Answer

My mom always thinks I am the most **ham-fisted**<sup>(1)</sup> in the family because whenever I tried some activities requiring **manual dexterity**<sup>(2)</sup>, I became **all thumbs**<sup>(3)</sup> and failed her. But today, I would tell you about the time when I took up a challenging handcraft activity and became a master of it. It is called origami which is the art of folding paper to create a particular object or animal.

It **was all the rage**<sup>(4)</sup> in my old school because to do this, you have to be very dexterous, skillful and patient, all of which are not exactly my strong suits though. I was caught up in all this hype so I asked my desk mate to **show me the ropes**<sup>(5)</sup>. Although he was a boy and not so bright in class, other classmates **had nothing on him**<sup>(6)</sup> when it came to origami. Anyway, he showed me how to fold the easiest figure – the crane. When I saw him fold the paper, it looked like a piece of cake; he finished it in the blink of an eye. When it was my turn to practice, I failed over and over again. I didn't know what I did wrong. Even when he patiently showed me step by step one more time, the result wasn't much better. I started to give up on myself. Luckily, when I was about to give up, my mom **gave me a nudge**<sup>(7)</sup> to keep going with origami instead of giving up. After all, my hard work paid off, I was able to master such a taxing art and I bought my friend a book on origami to return the favor

1. **ham-fisted** /ˌhæm'fɪs.tɪd/ = **ham-**

**handed** /ˌhæm'hændɪd/(a): vụng về

Ví dụ: I am not interested in arts and crafts because I am a ham-fisted person.

2. **manual dexterity**: sự khéo tay

**manual** /'mæn.ju.əl/, **dexterity**

/dek'ster.ə.ti/

Ví dụ: I don't have any manual dexterity so I can't take up any craft

3. **thumbs** /θʌmz/

**all thumbs**: diễn tả tình huống cụ thể khi ai đó đột ngột trở nên vụng về

Ví dụ: I couldn't cook today because whenever I was anywhere near the kitchen, I became all thumbs.

4. **rage** /reɪdʒ/

**be all the rage**: rất phổ biến

Ví dụ: Jazz was all the rage in our parents' age.

5. **show somebody the ropes**: chỉ dẫn ai cách làm việc gì

**ropes** /rəʊps/

Ví dụ: As a newbie in the company, I asked some seniors to show me the ropes.

6. **have nothing on somebody**: không sánh bằng ai

Ví dụ: My sister is pretty good at cooking, but she has nothing on my mother. She is truly a professional chef.

7. **nudge** /nʌdʒ/

**give somebody a nudge**: khích lệ ai đó một cách nhẹ nhàng

Ví dụ: Her words gave me the nudge I needed to try harder.

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What traditional handicrafts are popular in Vietnam?

There are various handicraft villages in Viet Nam, but the most popular one must be Bat Trang which is a traditional **porcelain**<sup>(1)</sup> and **pottery**<sup>(2)</sup> village in the outskirts of Ha Noi. Nowadays, **artisans**<sup>(3)</sup> combine traditional methods and modern techniques to create more special products and increase their quality, thus attracting both local and foreign tourists. Another kind of Vietnamese **handicrafts**<sup>(4)</sup> is conical hats which are best-selling souvenirs at tourist spots. In Viet Nam, Hue is home to many conical hat making villages which have formed and developed for hundreds of years and nowadays still remain their traditional craft.

<sup>(1)</sup>**porcelain** /'pɔːsəl.ɪn/ (n): sứ

<sup>(2)</sup>**pottery** /'pɒt.ər.i/ (n): gốm

Ví dụ: *Bat Trang is a traditional porcelain and pottery village in the outskirts of Ha Noi.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**artisan** /'ɑː.tɪ.zən/ = **craftsman** /'krɑːfts.mən/ (n): nghệ nhân

Ví dụ: *The number of artisans in many villages is decreasing because they couldn't earn enough money to support their life.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**handicraft** /'hæ.n.dɪ.kra:ft/ (n): đồ thủ công, nghề thủ công

Ví dụ: *I have a soft spot for handicrafts such as conical hats.*

### 2. What do young people think of traditional handicrafts?

I guess the young generation do not appreciate arts and crafts simply because today, mass production is more popular among young people than handcrafted items. Therefore, they are not aware of how much time and effort craftsmen put into the production of goods. Although when travelling, they seem to be interested in the local handmade products, they don't seriously think about learning to preserve such traditional handicrafts.

### 3. Do people in your country send handicrafts as gifts?

It's hard to tell because I can't speak for everyone, but for the most part, I don't think people send gifts by post anymore. Some may give their friends or loved ones a handcrafted item in person rather than sending it. This is simply because it would take a person days or even weeks to finish a handcraft so they may want to know if the recipient truly loves it or not. I mean, our facial expressions **speak volumes**<sup>(5)</sup>, so in case such a kind of gift is not **to her liking**<sup>(6)</sup>, people can come up with something else next time.

<sup>(5)</sup>**speak volumes**: nếu điều gì đó speak volumes, nó thể hiện một ý kiến, nét đặc trưng mà không cần dùng lời nói

Ví dụ: *She said very little but her face spoke volumes.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**to one's liking**: đúng theo ý thích của ai

**liking**: /'laɪ.kɪŋ/

Ví dụ: *I am a seafood lover so this dish is totally to my liking.*

### 4. What are the benefits of making handicrafts?

Learning to make a handcraft helps people to cultivate some valuable qualities. First of all, people can learn to become more patient because making handicrafts requires them to put in a lot of time and effort. I guess that's why most artisans seem very calm. Second of all, our manual dexterity can be improved when practicing handicrafts. Ham-fisted people can take advantage of this to work on their clumsiness.

# Something interesting

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time you saw something interesting on social media

You should say:

- When it was
- Where you saw it
- What you saw
- And explain why you think it was interesting

### Answer

Today, I am going to talk about a commercial that **is engraved in my mind**<sup>(1)</sup> for conveying a meaningful message. Well there is this life insurance advertisement that was circulated online a couple of years ago. I came across this video when scrolling through Facebook and the captivating headline which was “life is short” tickled my fancy and lured me into clicking on the link to see more. The video captured people’s attention and made some viewers **shed a tear**<sup>(2)</sup> after watching it because it was very moving.

Well, the ad is about the journey of a man who is generous to a fault and willing to help anyone he stumbles upon without expecting anything in return. He spares some money to a mother and a child who are beggars on the street, and helps a street vendor push her cart on an uneven pavement. The most impressive deed is when he donates all of his money left to a charity set up to help disabled children.

He continuously does these acts of kindness and later on, his benevolence pays off, he **hits the jackpot**<sup>(3)</sup> in a game and becomes a millionaire, and buys health insurance for a whole poor village in his hometown. That commercial was just meaningful because it instilled hope into people and encouraged them to look on the bright side. Despite the cruelty in this world, there are still **big-hearted**<sup>(4)</sup> people who are willing to help others without asking for anything in return.

1. **be engraved on one’s mind**: khắc sâu vào tâm trí ai

**engraved** /m'greɪv/ , **mind** /maɪnd/

Ví dụ: *That memorable trip has been engraved on her mind.*

2. **shed a tear**: rơi nước mắt

**shed** /ʃed/ **tear** /teər/

Ví dụ: *She always sheds a tear when watching Titanic.*

3. **hit the jackpot**: giành giải lớn nhất trong một cuộc thi, ngoài ra (cụm này còn mang nghĩa ai đó may mắn khi thành công hay kiếm được khoản tiền lớn)

**hit** /hɪt/ **jackpot** /'dʒæk.pɒt/

Ví dụ: *She was so in luck yesterday that she hit the jackpot and became a millionaire overnight.*

4. **big-hearted** /,bɪg'ha:tɪd/ (a): tốt bụng, rộng lượng

Ví dụ: *My grandmother is a big-hearted person as she always gives other a hand when they turn to her for help.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Why do people like to use social media?

There are two main reasons for our use of online platforms. Firstly, people are afraid of falling behind so they tend to **keep abreast**<sup>(1)</sup> of the world around them via social networks such as Facebook. This allows them to discuss any topics with their friends instead of being left out in a conversation either online or offline. Another reason is for entertainment purposes. Internet users **are actually spoiled for choice**<sup>(2)</sup> when it comes to entertainment. They can either watch various types of videos on facebook or even make their own ones on social media platforms like tiktok.

<sup>(1)</sup> **keep abreast of something**: cập nhật tin tức về việc gì

**abreast** /ə'breɪst/

Ví dụ: *Old people can read newspapers online to keep abreast of the world news.*

<sup>(2)</sup> **be spoiled for choice**: có nhiều sự lựa chọn

**spoil** /spɔɪl/ **choice** /tʃɔɪs/

Ví dụ: *When shopping online, you will be spoiled for choice and take hours to decide what to buy.*

### 2. What kinds of things are popular on social media?

There are two main kinds of content that can quickly go viral on online platforms. The first one is scandals of celebrities because curiosity is the nature of people. While most people admire the glamorous lives of famous people, they **are also hardwired to dig deep**<sup>(3)</sup> into a star's personal life and find faults. The next thing that can easily reach out to the public is augmented reality which has been applied on many social platforms such as Instagram.

<sup>(3)</sup> **be hardwired to do something**: làm việc gì một cách tự động, như bản năng

**hardwired** /hɑːd'waɪəd/

Ví dụ: *Humans are hardwired to love fattening foods.*

### 3. What are the advantages and disadvantages of using social media?

One of the grave concerns when using online platforms is hacking. Personal data and privacy can easily be hacked and shared on the Internet, which can result in financial and personal losses. Another problem is cyberbullying. Since anyone can create a fake account and do anything without being traced, it has become quite easy to bully on the Internet. Yet, we should still **look on the bright side**<sup>(4)</sup> and give social media some credit for bettering our lives. The greatest advantage must be developments in communication. Today, people from anywhere can connect with anyone, regardless of the location and religion.

<sup>(4)</sup> **look on the bright side (idiom)**: nhìn vào mặt tích cực

**bright** /braɪt/ , **side** /saɪd/

Ví dụ: *Although life can be full of challenges and failure, we should look on the bright side to keep going.*

### 4. What do you think of making friends on social networks?

I think people should be more prudent to make friends online. Admittedly, it is easier for people to widen their social circle on the internet simply because they can connect with people from all walks of life all over the world. Of course, there is still a language barrier, but google translation can give us a helping hand. Yet, the main problem is that their real life friendships can be put at stake. People can lose themselves in online interaction and end up abandoning their real-life friends. But, when problems arise, people can rarely rely on their virtual relationships to help them out.

# Buying something from a street market

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time you bought something from a street (or outdoor) market

You should say:

- When it was
- Where you saw it
- What you saw
- And explain why you think it was interesting

### Answer

When I saw this topic, the object that popped into my mind was a bracelet I bought for my best friend last year. When her birthday was just **around the corner**<sup>(1)</sup>, I panicked because I had no idea what to give her. It was such a coincidence that one week before her birthday, I went on a trip to Bangkok and decided to buy her a souvenir as a birthday present.

The night before I headed back to Vietnam, I visited the night market located right at the heart of Bangkok city. I was taken aback by the sight of such a bustling market, and everyone seemed to be packed like sardines. After browsing through various stalls, an arty-crafty gift shop **caught my eye**<sup>(2)</sup> so I went inside to see if there was anything for my best friend. The moment I walked into the shop, I **had my eye on a pair**<sup>(3)</sup> of adjustable bracelets. They are made from vibrant embroidery threads with some brightly coloured beads. They looked feminine and chic, which is definitely to my friend's liking so I purchased them. I gave them to her on her birthday and she seemed to **be thrilled to bits**<sup>(4)</sup> with my gift. She said that she tried tying a sliding knot friendship bracelet for me before but somehow she became all thumbs and finally gave up, so she appreciated my gift a great deal. It's like I could read her mind.

**1. around the corner:** sắp tới, sắp diễn ra

**corner** /'kɔː.nər/

*Ví dụ: When Tet is around the corner, everyone will be busy with cleaning and decorating their houses.*

**2. catch one's eye:** thu hút sự chú ý

**catch** /kætʃ/, **eye** /aɪ/

*Ví dụ: That red sparkling dress caught my eyes immediately after I walked into the store.*

**3. have one's eye on something:** để mắt tới, muốn có cái gì

**eye** /aɪ/

*Ví dụ: I have had my eye on the new Iphone 13 but have had money to buy it yet.*

**4. be thrilled to bits:** cực kỳ hài lòng

**thrilled** /θrɪld/ **bits** /bɪts/

*Ví dụ: My parents were thrilled to bits with my excellent results at the end of the school year.*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kinds of markets are there in Vietnam?

Personally, street markets are the first kind that pop into my mind. It's easy to **catch sight** of this market everywhere in Viet Nam. People can find a wide range of products there from fresh ingredients to ready made food. The great thing about this kind of market is that you can **haggle with the sellers** for the best price. The next one is flea markets which are less popular probably because Vietnamese people tend to **hand down**<sup>(3)</sup> old items to family members rather than sell them.

<sup>(1)</sup>**catch sight of**: bắt gặp

**catch** /kætʃ/, **sight** /saɪt/

Ví dụ: *It's easy to catch sight of a street market in Viet Nam.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**haggle/bargain with somebody**: trả giá với ai

**haggle** /'hæɡ.əl/, **bargain** /'ba:.ɡɪn/

Ví dụ: *It's impossible to haggle when shopping in a supermarket.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**hand something down**: truyền lại đồ gì cho người trong nhà

**hand** /hænd/

Ví dụ: *My great grandparents handed down some old books to my grandparents and those have been the heirlooms in our family.*

### 2. Do you think small markets will disappear in the future?

I don't think so, at least not in Viet Nam. Today, every place in our country is getting more and more populous, and the more crowded a place is the more small markets exist, which is to cater for the increasing need for food and daily groceries in that area. Moreover, Vietnamese people seem to prefer small markets simply because they hate **being packed like sardines**<sup>(4)</sup> when shopping at bigger markets or even supermarkets, especially during some national holidays.

<sup>(4)</sup>**be packed like sardines**: phải chen chúc, nhồi nhét vì quá đông người

**packed** /pækt/ **sardines** /sɑ:'di:n/

Ví dụ: *It's uncomfortable to be packed like sardines in a bus.*

### 3. Have people's shopping habits changed in recent years?

We can definitely see some changes in the way people shop for the past few years. The most palpable one is how they make a decision for purchase. Before social media, people only bought items that got good reviews from their acquaintances or friends. Yet, today, everyone is so influenced by social media that they are more likely to buy products endorsed by a celebrity than those that their friends rave about. In addition, customers are also becoming more eco-friendly so some of them may boycott products made of non-degradable materials and support green items.

### 4. What are the differences between shopping in street markets and big shopping malls?

Street markets differ from big shopping malls in the price of products. While every item in a shopping mall is sold at a fixed price, the price of those in a market can be negotiated, meaning that shoppers can bargain with sellers to get a good discount. Another difference is that while a shopping center has other entertainment facilities such as cinemas or interactive kids zones, there is no such thing in a market. Therefore, a shopping center seems to be a better choice to shop with the whole family.

# Trying to do something

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a time when you tried to do something but was not very successful

You should say:

- When it was
- What you tried
- Why it was not very successful
- And how you felt about it

### Answer

Today, I am gonna talk about the time when I decided to stop **living off my parents**<sup>(1)</sup> and learned to **stand on my own feet**<sup>(2)</sup>. Yet, things don't always go as planned because no matter how much I tried, I still couldn't survive on my own. I kept getting stabbed in the back at work and finally was fired over and over again. After all, I **threw in the towel**<sup>(3)</sup> and crawled back to my parents.

When I first moved to HCM city, I was **down on my luck**<sup>(4)</sup> for 2 weeks straight, but I kept **looking on the bright side**<sup>(5)</sup> and leveraged my networks to get myself a job. Although I was able to work as a real estate agent for a couple of months, it did not last for long. Some of my colleagues were jealous of me because I have a knack for selling houses, so they tricked me into disclosing some confidential information of the company and got me fired. I couldn't believe that I hung around with such backstabbers. I completely lost faith in people and decided to go back to my hometown. The main reason why I was so resolved to leave at first is because some of my friends say that life is full of ups and downs and everyone is supposed to learn to overcome obstacles in life, not to be over reliant on their parents. I actually bought that, but I guess everyone has a different path and we don't need to **follow the crowd**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**1. live off somebody:** sống dựa dẫm vào ai

*Ví dụ: Some people live off their parents until they get married.*

**2. stand on one's own feet (idiom):** tự lập

**stand** /stænd/, **own** /əʊn/, **feet** /fi:t/

*Ví dụ: It's necessary to learn to stand on your own feet instead of relying on your parents.*

**3. throw in the towel (idiom):** đầu hàng, bỏ cuộc

**throw** /θrəʊ/, **towel** /taʊəl/

*Ví dụ: Determined people don't throw in the towel easily.*

**4. down on one's luck:** gặp xui xẻo

**luck** /lʌk/  
*Ví dụ: I've been down on my luck lately as I lost my wallet, my money and even had a car accident.*

**5. look on the bright side (idiom):** nhìn vào mặt tích cực

**bright** /braɪt/, **side** /saɪd/

*Ví dụ: Life is full of ups and downs so we need to learn to look on the bright side.*

**6. follow the crowd (idiom):** đi theo số đông, làm điều mà đa phần mọi người làm

**follow** /'fɒl.əʊ/, **crowd** /kraʊd/

*Ví dụ: We don't have to follow the crowd to be successful. We should pursue our own passion.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What's your definition of success?

Since I am always a **happy camper**<sup>(1)</sup>, my definition of success is pretty simple. Whether it **lives up to my expectations**<sup>(2)</sup> or not, I still take pride in the result of my work as long as I do my best. This is because what I revel in is not the final result but the whole process itself, which means how much I try to learn to overcome my laziness and **muster up all my will power**<sup>(3)</sup> to get the job done. As I see it, many people can easily **give into temptation or challenges**<sup>(4)</sup>, so for me, being able to make it till the end is already a success.

<sup>(1)</sup>**happy camper** /,hæp.i 'kæm.pə/ : người hài lòng với tình huống, hoàn cảnh của mình

Ví dụ: *I just found out about the pay cut and I am not a happy camper.*

<sup>(2)</sup> **live up to one's expectations**: đạt đúng kỳ vọng của ai

**expectations** /,ek.spek'teɪ.fənz/

Ví dụ: *It's not easy to live up to our parent's expectations.*

<sup>(3)</sup> **muster up will power/courage**: gom hết ý chí, sự can đảm

**muster** /'mʌs.tər/, **will** /wɪl/, **power** /paʊər/, **courage** /'kʌr.ɪdʒ/

Ví dụ: *My best friend finally mustered up the courage to quit her boring job.*

<sup>(4)</sup> **give into something**: đầu hàng, bỏ cuộc trước việc gì

Ví dụ: *Successful people don't give into challenges..*

### 2. What things do children try to succeed in?

I am not sure how the situation is in other countries but in Viet Nam, most children are under huge pressure to perform successfully at school. This is simply because most Vietnamese parents **equate good academic results with future success**<sup>(5)</sup>, so they keep pushing their kids to learn more and more. That's why kids strive to achieve high scores at school in order to measure up to their parents' expectations. Another thing that some kids may also try to **excel in is making friends**<sup>(6)</sup>. Of course, this is not a problem for every kid but only to some who are shy. These children find it hard to strike up a conversation or just make small talk, so they may go out of their way to widen their social circle.

<sup>(5)</sup> **equate something with something**: đánh đồng việc gì với việc gì

**equate** /i'kwet/

Ví dụ: *Most people equate money with happiness.*

<sup>(6)</sup> **excel in something**: cực kì giỏi việc gì

**excel** /ɪk'sel/

Ví dụ: *My mother excels in cooking. In fact, she once considered becoming a professional chef.*

### 3. Which do you think is more important for people to become successful? Hard work or opportunities?

I think hard work is instrumental in making our way in this world. As far as i am concerned, opportunities exist everyday in our lives and while most people can recognize this, only a few of them can turn a chance into a success. The key difference here is how much time and effort they are willing to spend on their opportunity. It's always easier said than done, so many people give into temptation or challenges too soon before their hard work pays off, thus not being able to succeed. Even the child prodigies became world-class experts in their fields, only after working at it for a long time.

#### 4. Do you think people will be happy if they don't have any goals to achieve?

Yes, there are still people, especially idle ones, who are thrilled to not set goals in their lives simply because it's hard for them to overcome their own laziness. It's not likely that they can put enough time and effort into achieving a goal, so having an unfinished one is even more frustrating than not having it at all. Yet, the majority of our society seems to **revel in having**<sup>(7)</sup> and working towards a goal. Not knowing what to do next in life or at work can bore these people silly and demotivate them a lot.

<sup>(7)</sup> **revel in something**: vui sướng vì việc gì

**revel** /'rev.əl/

Ví dụ: *The company revelled in their success in winning the contract.*

# A singer

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

### Describe a singer you like

You should say:

- Who he/she is
- What his/her personality is like
- What kind of style his/her music belongs to
- And explain why you like him/her

### Answer

Today I'm going to talk about my favorite idol – Taylor Swift. Her name may **ring a bell**<sup>(1)</sup> with you as she is deemed a global icon only after Micheal Jackson. She is internationally renowned for her **catchy**<sup>(2)</sup> songs as well as her peerless beauty. Rather than just a globally acclaimed singer, she is also famed for being a generous philanthropist who donated large sums of money to many global charities.

What takes me by surprise most about her is that whenever she appears in public, she always seems **good-humoured**<sup>(3)</sup>, which speaks volumes about her sense of optimism in life. Unlike other celebrities who tend to be quite arrogant and unapproachable, Taylor is regarded as affable and humble. In fact, it is her cheerful and sunny disposition that endears her to music fans of all ages, especially teenagers. Whenever she **gets in a tight**<sup>(4)</sup> corner, she always looks on the bright side and tries to figure out the best solution to her problem. For example, one time, she was caught up in a plagiarism scandal but she totally **took it in her stride**<sup>(5)</sup> instead of **making a scene**<sup>(6)</sup> which most singers would do. One last thing about her personal traits is that she is quite fun-loving. Whenever she hangs out with her closest friends, she posts videos on instagram in which she cracked a lot of jokes. Sometimes I wonder, how she could always be **full of beans**<sup>(7)</sup> like that.

**1. ring a bell (idiom):** nghe quen thuộc  
**ring** /rɪŋ/, **bell** /bel/

*Ví dụ: The title of this song rings a bell to me. I must have heard it somewhere.*

**2. catchy** /'kætʃ.i/ (a): nghe bắt tai  
*Ví dụ: I am a huge fan of Taylor Swift because of her catchy songs.*

**3. good-humoured** /,ɡʊd'hjuː.məd/ (a)  
có tâm trạng tốt

*Ví dụ: Despite failing the test, Anne is still good humoured today.*

**4. be in a tight corner:** gặp tình huống khó khăn

**tight** /taɪt/ **corner** /'kɔː.nər/  
*Ví dụ: Whenever he gets in a tight corner, he turns to me for help.*

**5. take something in one's stride:** điềm tĩnh giải quyết vấn đề gì  
**stride** /straɪd/

*Ví dụ: Celebrities should learn to take scandals into their strides.*

**6. make a scene:** làm lớn chuyện, ồn ào

**scene** /siːn/  
*Ví dụ: Celebrities should learn to take scandals into their strides instead of making a scene.*

**7. full of beans:** tràn đầy năng lượng  
**beans** /biːnz/

*Ví dụ: She seems full of beans all the time. It's good to hang out with someone so optimistic and energetic.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kind of music do people like at different ages?

I am afraid there is no specific answer to this question because people seem to stick to the kind of music that they first start listening to from a young age. Our musical tastes begin to solidify as early as age 13 or 14, and studies indicate that most of us stop exploring new music entirely by the time we turn 33. That is to say, if a music genre was **all the rage**<sup>(1)</sup> when we were in our early teens, it is likely to remain quite popular among our age group throughout our life. For example, a person who was born in the 70s would be a huge fan of disco, whereas millennials would be into pop or hip hop.

<sup>(1)</sup> **all the rage**: từng rất nổi tiếng, phổ biến  
**rage** /reɪdʒ/

Ví dụ: *Jazz was all the rage during our parents' age.*

### 2. What kind of music is popular in Vietnam now and what kind will be in the future?

I am not a music **buff**<sup>(2)</sup> so it's hard to tell apart different types of music. But, I often hear young people talking about hard-hitting lyrics in a rap song and if my memory serves me right, recently there has been a popular tv show called Rap Viet, so I guess rap is all the rage in VietNam right now. Personally, I don't find rap songs catchy at all so I hope that in the coming years, more **tuneful**<sup>(3)</sup> types of music such as pop and ballads would gain popularity again.

<sup>(2)</sup> **buff** /bʌf/(n): người thích và am hiểu về một lĩnh vực nào đó

Ví dụ: *I am a music buff so I am familiar with many music types.*

<sup>(3)</sup> **tuneful** /'tjuːn.fəl/ (a): nghe dễ chịu

Ví dụ: *Tuneful songs can really help you to relax.*

### 3. Do Vietnamese parents require their children to learn to play musical instruments?

I think some authoritarian parents do send their kids to music classes or hire a private tutor to teach them how to play the piano or violin, which is often against their will. I am not **well-versed in music**<sup>(4)</sup> but I still know that having a good grasp of such musical instruments takes a lot of time and effort. Yet, children are already under a lot of pressure at school, so it's better not to force them to take up something they are not into. Because music is supposed to **cheer people up**<sup>(5)</sup>, not to torture them, people should play it passionately not reluctantly.

<sup>(4)</sup> **be well-versed in something** /,wel 'vɜːst/: am hiểu về việc gì

Ví dụ: *Shark tank is my favorite show because the investors are so well-versed in business.*

<sup>(5)</sup> **cheer somebody up**: khiến ai vui vẻ lên  
**cheer** /tʃiər/

Ví dụ: *The best way to cheer someone up is to let them listen to music.*

#### 4. Why do some people like to listen to live music while others prefer CDs?

Some people prefer to go to a concert because of the exciting experience. During a live performance the music unfolds in a unique and not predetermined way, potentially increasing anticipation and feelings of involvement for the audience. Being in the same space as the musicians might also be exhilarating to most fans. Yet, there are still those who are more into recorded music on CDs. These people may not fancy being packed like sardines at a concert so they opt for a more comfortable way to **immerse themselves in music**<sup>(4)</sup>. Plus, singers often **put their heart and soul into their recordings**<sup>(5)</sup> to express their authentic emotions, so it's easier for fans to relate to their feelings in a recorded song.

<sup>(4)</sup> **immerse oneself in something**: đắm mình vào việc gì

**immerse** /ɪ'mɜːs/

Ví dụ: *Whenever I feel stressed out, I immerse myself in reading books to relax.*

<sup>(5)</sup> **put one's heart and soul into something**: nỗ lực hết mình làm việc gì

**heart** /hɑːt/, **soul** /səʊl/

Ví dụ: *She put her heart and soul into a handmade gift for her boyfriend.*

# A piece of equipment

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a piece of equipment that is important in your home

You should say:

- How often you use it
- With whom you use it
- And explain why it is important

### Answer

As I am a **neat freak**<sup>(1)</sup>, I not only keep myself clean all the time but also **spruce my house up**<sup>(2)</sup> on a daily basis to keep it in order. That's why cleaning used to be a labor-intensive and time-consuming task for me. But today, it's no longer a hassle to keep my clean because I got myself a vacuum cleaner which really comes in handy when I do my household chores. Since it was top of the line, I **paid through the nose for it**<sup>(3)</sup>, but it was totally worth it.

When shopping for such a useful device online, I was spoilt for choice. I spent nearly 2 hours narrowing the list down to 2 types including upright vacuums and canister vacuums. I **was in 2 minds**<sup>(4)</sup> about which to pick out because they all seem to have both pros and cons. Luckily, a friend of mine gave me a review on her upright vacuum and she said that it was definitely **not a patch on the canister type**<sup>(5)</sup>. After hearing this, I made up my mind and ordered the latest model of a canister vacuum online. It was quite user-friendly so I took little time to get used to it.

It can also be equipped with a variety of tools such as crevice nozzle, upholstery brush, and even mechanized brush to increase their efficiency on carpets and rugs. These tools are usually conveniently placed either on the canister, or directly on the wand. Honestly, I couldn't imagine my life without this vacuum.

1. **neat freak**: người cực kì thích sự gọn gàng, sạch sẽ

**neat** /ni:t/, **freak** /fri:k/

Ví dụ: *As a neat freak, it annoys me when my room is untidy.*

2. **spruce something up**: dọn dẹp gọn gàng

**spruce** /spru:s/

Ví dụ: *As a neat freak, I spruce my house up everyday.*

3. **pay through the nose for something**: phải trả rất nhiều tiền cho cái gì

**nose** /nouz/

Ví dụ: *I paid through the nose for the new Iphone 13, but it's totally worth it.*

4. **be in two minds (idiom)**: lưỡng lự

**minds** /maɪndz/

Ví dụ: *She was in two minds whether to study abroad or go to university in Viet Nam.*

5. **not a patch on something**: không tốt, không sánh bằng cái gì

**patch** /pætʃ/

Ví dụ: *Some people argue that a Samsung phone is not a patch on an Iphone.*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What kinds of machines are there in people's homes?

It depends on the family budget. But generally speaking, most households can afford basic electric appliances such as washing machines, refrigerators, and televisions to name a few. These items make it more convenient and time-saving to do household chores as well as provide the family with home comfort. In addition, some **well-to-do**<sup>(2)</sup> families can even **splurge on some high tech products**<sup>(1)</sup>, such as a smart fridge which responds to voice commands, or even build a home theatre system.

<sup>(1)</sup>**splurge on something**: vung tiền cho việc gì  
**splurge** /splɜːdʒ/

Ví dụ: *Slaves to fashion often splurge money on new items to stay trendy.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**well-to-do(a)** rich

Ví dụ: *She comes from a well-to-do family but she is a modest and humble friend.*

### 2. What are the differences between the young and the old in their attitudes towards machines?

I guess the elderly are more likely to lose their temper and patience when they use some cutting edge devices that are not exactly user-friendly. It's harder for them to **wrap their mind around all the operation**<sup>(3)</sup> and functions of the machines and they think they are too old to learn so they may **shy away from such devices**<sup>(4)</sup>. By contrast, when it comes to a high tech gadget, no matter how complicated it is to use, youngsters always become quick and patient learners.

<sup>(3)</sup>**wrap one's mind around something**: hiểu được điều gì thường khó hiểu hoặc lằng lắt

**wrap** /ræp/ **mind** /maɪnd/

Ví dụ: *Students find it hard to wrap their mind around sciences.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**shy away from something**: né tránh điều gì

**shy** /ʃaɪ/

Ví dụ: *Lazy workers shy away from demanding tasks.*

### 3. What kinds of professions require people to use machines?

Almost all kinds of work, either clerical or manual, are more or less related to machines. Office workers may have to use printers and scanners to deal with documents. Plus, they constantly use computers or laptops to process data. Also for those who work as waiters or waitresses, if they work in a big restaurant or a coffeehouse, they **are definitely no stranger to a time clock or the automatic ordering system**<sup>(5)</sup>.

<sup>(5)</sup>**be no stranger to something**: quen thuộc với việc gì

**stranger** /'streɪn.dʒər/

Ví dụ: *As a florist, my sister is no stranger to lion orchid which is a rare floral species.*

### 4. Will many people's work be done by robots in the future?

I think automation is becoming a global trend and soon, many people will be put out of work. Physically demanding jobs, such as loading and unloading in warehouses or building houses, may be completely replaced by robots because of their higher productivity and cheaper operation costs. Not only labour-intensive fields but intellectually demanding jobs may be performed completely by robots in the future. For example, autonomous cars and self-flying planes will substitute for human drivers and pilots.

# A creative person

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a creative person whose work you admire

You should say:

- Who he/she is
- How do you know him/her
- What creative things he/she has done
- And explain why you think he or she is creative

### Answer

Well, there is a celebrity that I've been dying to meet in person, who I personally believe is one of the most creative. Her name is Taylor Swift - a worldwide **renowned**<sup>(1)</sup> American artist. If I remember correctly, I got to know her when I was browsing Youtube and came across one of her most well-known songs - Red. I was immediately **hooked on**<sup>(2)</sup> the catchy melody and genuinely impressed by how gorgeous she looked in the music video. The more I get to know about her, the more I understand that she has such a passion for music and she is not only a great performer but also the **composer**<sup>(4)</sup> behind every hit song of hers. She once shared that the inspiration of her songs comes from her own experience and within herself and her process of songwriting requires a combination of emotion, creativity, and imagination. Her **motto**<sup>(3)</sup> is each artist should be the creator of their own artwork and I think that is what makes her **original**<sup>(5)</sup>, yet **extraordinary**<sup>(6)</sup>. She recently just re-recorded her old albums and I believe it even takes more creativity and hours of hard work to recreate old artworks, **let alone**<sup>(7)</sup> those albums themselves were **megahits**<sup>(8)</sup>. I guess her originality inspires me and many young rising artists to stay creative.

**1. renowned** /rɪˈnaʊnd/ (adj): nổi tiếng  
Ví dụ: *Hercule Poirot is the most renowned character in Agatha Christie's detective novels.*

**2. hook on** (phr.v): bị cuốn hút bởi  
Ví dụ: *I got hooked on the series after watching the first episode.*

**3. motto** /ˈmɑː.təʊ/ (n): châm ngôn sống  
Ví dụ: *Nowadays, a lot of local brands in Vietnam print different mottos on their products.*

**4. composer** /kəmˈpəʊ.zə/ (n): nhà soạn nhạc  
Ví dụ: *Jack Antonoff is the co-composer for all of the songs in Taylor Swift's latest album.*

**5. original** /əˈrɪdʒ.ən.əl/ (a): bản gốc  
Ví dụ: *Don't copy other essays, you should try to come up with your own original ideas.*

**6. extraordinary** /ɪkˈstrɔːr.dən.ər.i/ (a): phi thường  
Ví dụ: *Although I hate her, I have to admit that she has an extraordinary talent for singing.*

**7. let alone**: huống chi là  
Ví dụ: *The beach is crowded every weekend, let alone holiday seasons.*

**8. megahit** (n): tác phẩm âm nhạc hoặc điện ảnh rất thành công  
Ví dụ: *Lady Gaga didn't expect her song would become a megahit.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Do you think you are a creative person?

I don't, actually. I think I'm quite **old-fashioned**<sup>(1)</sup> and always **stick to**<sup>(2)</sup> the conventional ways of doing things. I also think that I have no talent for anything art-related so I don't really get to express my creativity much, which is also why I have a great **admiration**<sup>(3)</sup> for people who can come up with new things.

<sup>(1)</sup>**old-fashioned** /ˌoʊldˈfæʃ.ənd/ (adj): lỗi thời

Ví dụ: *Her clothes are too old-fashioned, they are like from the 80's.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**stick to (phr.v)**: tuân theo

Ví dụ: *Students should stick to the teacher's essay template to avoid any penalty.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**admiration** /ˌæd.mə'reɪ.ʃən/ (n): sự khâm phục

Ví dụ: *My admiration for my mother grows every day.*

### 2. Is it good for children to learn art?

Totally. Art allows children to express themselves more freely and **stimulates**<sup>(4)</sup> their creativity and imagination. A balance between art and science subjects would help children to become more **well-rounded**<sup>(5)</sup>. Even though not all children are **gifted in**<sup>(6)</sup> art, I think they should have more **exposure**<sup>(7)</sup> to it.

<sup>(4)</sup>**stimulate** /ˈstim.jə.leɪt/ (v): kích thích

Ví dụ: *My company will set specific targets for every employee as a method to stimulate their working performance.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**well-rounded** /ˌwel 'raʊn.dɪd/ (adj): toàn diện

Ví dụ: *Many researches show that home-educated children cannot receive a well-rounded education.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**gifted in (phr.v)**: có năng khiếu

Ví dụ: *Everyone said that my daughter is gifted in learning foreign languages.*

<sup>(7)</sup>**exposure** /ɪk'spoʊ.ʒə/ (n): sự tiếp xúc

Ví dụ: *Students need exposure to practical experience.*

### 3. What kinds of jobs require people to be creative?

I'd say most jobs. Most people would say only artists need to be creative without any hesitation, but I think every career could **benefit**<sup>(8)</sup> from creativity. For example, creative teachers could think of more ways to organize their class and encourage students to learn, or business managers could **come up with**<sup>(9)</sup> different ways to please their customers. But obviously, painters, actors, directors, or anyone working in art-related fields definitely need to be more creative.

<sup>(8)</sup>**benefit** /ˈben.ə.fɪt/ (v): có lợi, được hưởng lợi ích

Ví dụ: *I have benefited greatly from my family business.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**come up with (phr.v)**: đưa ra ý kiến, cách giải quyết

Ví dụ: *It is urgent for the government to come up with a long-term plan to cope with this issue.*

#### 4. Do you think leaders need to have creative ability?

It is not really necessary as there are other more important skills like communication or **leadership**<sup>(10)</sup>. But it would be an **advantage**<sup>(12)</sup> if leaders can be creative as they would perceive things differently and that can help them to achieve their goals faster and more efficiently, unlike those who like to stay in their comfort zone and follow the same patterns. But all in all, most employers don't consider this as the key point when looking for a leader.

<sup>(10)</sup>**leadership** /'li:.də.ʃɪp/ (n): khả năng lãnh đạo  
Ví dụ: *He couldn't be promoted because of his poor leadership skills.*

<sup>(11)</sup>**advantage** /əd'væntɪdʒ/ (n): lợi ích  
Ví dụ: *The advantage of booking hotels in advance is that you get better prices.*

# A habit

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe a habit your friend has and you want to develop

You should say:

- Who your friend is
- What habit he/she has
- When you noticed this habit
- And explain why you want to develop this habit

### Answer

I have this one close girlfriend, Jane, who is one of the healthiest people I've ever met. I first met her 3 years ago when we were both **newbies**<sup>(1)</sup> at university, and we surprisingly **clicked**<sup>(2)</sup> right away. She was chubby and I believed that made her even more charming besides her lively personality. It was during our third year that I realized she had lost a significant amount of weight. I was surprised to find out that she was taking yoga classes in the morning to lose weight and improve her **stamina**<sup>(3)</sup>. I myself was never into any kind of sport, not even gym, and that was probably why I had such poor stamina and felt ill once in a while for no reason. Jane told me that ever since she **took up**<sup>(4)</sup> yoga, not only did she **get lean**<sup>(5)</sup> but she also found her inner peace, which made her less stressed. I acknowledged those mental and physical changes that she'd made and honestly, I wanted to be like her. I am always **up to my ears**<sup>(6)</sup> with work, so taking up yoga would certainly **do wonders**<sup>(7)</sup> for my health and help me **destress**<sup>(8)</sup>.

**1. Newbie (n)** /'nju:.bi/: người mới

Ví dụ: *Newbies at our club will be paired with a mentor.*

**2. Click (v)** /kɪk/: thích và hợp ai đó trong lần đầu gặp

Ví dụ: *My best friend and I just clicked when we met on the first day at school.*

**3. Stamina (N)** /'stæmɪnə/: sức bền

Ví dụ: *Doing exercise regularly can improve one's stamina.*

**4. Take up (phr.v)**: bắt đầu thói quen mới

Ví dụ: *Not many people take up sports during their 50's.*

**5. Get lean (phr.v)** /ɡet li:n/: trở nên cân đối hơn

Ví dụ: *A lot of people go to the gym to get lean.*

**6. Up to ears (idiom)**: rất bận

Ví dụ: *People are up to their ears with work at the end of the year*

**7. Do wonders for**: mang đến điều kì diệu cho

Ví dụ: *Going to sleep early can do wonders for your health.*

**8. Destress (v)**: giảm stress

Ví dụ: *I took up yoga as a way to destress.*

## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. What habits should children have?

Reading, without a doubt. Besides providing children with more knowledge, reading also increases their **attention span**<sup>(1)</sup> and **stimulates**<sup>(2)</sup> their imagination and creativity. Not to mention, reading is beneficial for their future study and work as research and reading are **inseparable**<sup>(3)</sup>. Children should also take up sport or any kind of physical exercise as this will keep their body and mind active.

<sup>(1)</sup>**Attention span** / ə'tenʃ(ə)n spæn / : thời gian tập trung

Ví dụ: *Kids usually have quite short attention spans.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**Stimulate (v)** / stimjuleɪt / : kích thích

Ví dụ: *Reading can stimulate kids' imagination as they have to imagine scenarios from the stories they read.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**Inseparable** /ɪn'sep.rə.bəl/ (a) : không thể tách rời

Ví dụ: *The two kids seem to be inseparable, probably because they are twins.*

### 2. What should parents do to teach their children good habits?

A good way to form good habits for children is to engage in those activities with them. Most children follow their parents' habits so **setting good examples**<sup>(4)</sup> is necessary. Plus, this would give parents more time and space to **strengthen the bonds**<sup>(5)</sup> with their kids.

<sup>(4)</sup>**Set good examples (collocation)**: Làm tấm gương tốt

Ví dụ: *Parents should set a good example if they want their children to behave in a good manner.*

<sup>(5)</sup>**Strengthen the bond (collocation)**: thắt chặt mối liên kết

Ví dụ: *Regular meetings can strengthen the bonds between the members.*

### 3. What influences do children with bad habits have on other children?

Mostly negative impacts I'd say. Children are easily influenced by their **peers**<sup>(6)</sup> and being together with those who have bad habits can result in them behaving in the same manner. For example, many kids think it is cool to smoke as it makes them look somewhat more mature so some others may try to smoke to look cool. The worst thing is that not many children can tell the difference between right and wrong.

<sup>(6)</sup>**Peer** /piə/ (n) : bạn cùng tuổi

Ví dụ: *It is easier to become friends with peers than those who are older or younger.*

#### 4. Why do some habits change when people get older?

There are plenty, and most are easy to understand. First off, many people **take up**<sup>(7)</sup> sport or go to the gym as they grow older to improve their health, which is something most people **neglect**<sup>(8)</sup> when they are younger. Or, on the contrary, they change their habits because they are no longer physically suitable for their old habits, like doing extreme sports.

<sup>(7)</sup>**Take up:** bắt đầu thói quen mới

Ví dụ: *I recently took up swimming to improve my height.*

<sup>(8)</sup>**Neglect (v)** / ˈnɪˈɡlekt/ : thờ ơ

Ví dụ: *He has been neglecting his responsibility for the group for a month.*

# An activity

## IELTS Speaking Part 2

Describe an activity that you do after school/work

You should say:

- What it is
- When and Where you do it
- Who you do it with
- And how you feel about it

### Answer

I don't have much free time after school, but I always manage to make time for 30 minutes of swimming. I first took up swimming 3 years ago when I needed to get lean, and also because my mom was constantly **nagging**<sup>(1)</sup> me about my weight. I was never into sports, so it was hard the first few days to **drag**<sup>(2)</sup> myself to the pool and start practicing. Not to mention, I was terrible at it, as if I had zero talent or any genes for physical activities. My swimming instructor almost gave up after the first week as I **made no progress**<sup>(3)</sup> at all. But after a month, I could finally swim around the pool by myself and hold my breath under water, which used to be a real challenge for me. I had to take swimming lessons at a sports center that is quite far from home, but I've recently gone to the gym near my house to save time. The pool isn't as wide but the facilities there were **up-to-date**<sup>(4)</sup> and it was more convenient. Most days, I go swimming alone but sometimes my bestie **tags along**<sup>(5)</sup>, especially on weekends, so we can spend more time together. I must admit going swimming really does wonders for your body and I've been both physically and mentally healthier ever since. I plan to **take up**<sup>(6)</sup> badminton on Sundays next month because I want to participate in my schools' sports competition next year.

1. **nag (v)** /næg/: cần nhằn

Ví dụ: *Some parents think nagging can force the children to do something they dislike.*

2. **drag (v)** /dræg/: kéo lê

Ví dụ: *Don't drag your bag unless you want it to get dirty.*

3. **make no progress (collocation)**: không có tiến bộ

Ví dụ: *Learning a language without practicing can make no progress.*

4. **up-to-date (a)** /ˌʌp.tə 'deɪt/: hiện đại

Ví dụ: *My school has up-to-date facilities*

5. **tag along (phr.v)**: đi cùng với ai đó  
**tag** /tæg/

Ví dụ: *We just met her and she just tagged along with us.*

6. **take up (phr.v)**: bắt đầu một thói quen mới

Ví dụ: *Taking up swimming can make a real change to your physique.*



## IELTS Speaking Part 3

### 1. Why do some people enjoy extreme sports?

For one thing, the **adrenaline rush**<sup>(1)</sup>. Extreme sports definitely get people **hooked**<sup>(2)</sup> and even addicted to strong emotions that can't be found in normal life. For example, some popular extreme sports like skydiving or skiing attract millions of people every year out of **curiosity**<sup>(3)</sup>. They all look for the **thrill**<sup>(4)</sup> of taking risks when participating in these sports.

<sup>(1)</sup>**adrenaline rush** /ə'drenəlɪn rʌʃ/: sự phấn khởi do tăng adrenaline

Ví dụ: *People come to this theme park to experience the adrenaline rush.*

<sup>(2)</sup>**hooked (a)** hʊkt: trở nên thích thú

Ví dụ: *She was hooked by the shiny look of the purse.*

<sup>(3)</sup>**curiosity (n)** /ˌkjʊə.ri'bs.ə.ti/: sự tò mò

Ví dụ: *Children usually have a lot of curiosity about the natural world.*

<sup>(4)</sup>**thrill (n)** /θrɪl/: sự hào hứng, phấn khích

Ví dụ: *Young people often love the thrill of winning a competition.*

### 2. Are men more likely to do extreme sports than women?

Probably because women are easily terrified and more **cautious**<sup>(5)</sup> so trying something as risky as extreme sports isn't usually their thing. Besides, many women aren't physically fit enough for these activities so this also stops them from participating. Men, on the other hand, tend to show off what they can do and push **boundaries**<sup>(6)</sup>, so it is more common to find male players for these sports.

<sup>(5)</sup>**cautious (a)** /'kɔː.ʃəs/: cẩn thận

Ví dụ: *Drivers should be cautious when driving on highways.*

<sup>(6)</sup>**boundary(n)** /'baʊn.dəri/: giới hạn

Ví dụ: *Residents need to stay away from the city boundary.*

### 3. What are the most popular outdoor activities in Vietnam?

I believe it's football. A lot of schools teach football and kids learn how to play it from a very young age. Besides, it only requires a ball and at least 4 people to start a match and doesn't have any age limit so anyone can join. Plus, playing football needs full concentration and a good level of fitness and **coordination**<sup>(7)</sup>, which keeps both your mind and body active at the same time. A lot of school students also play **shuttlecock**<sup>(8)</sup> at **recess**<sup>(9)</sup>.

<sup>(7)</sup>**coordination (n)** /kəʊ.ɔː.dɪ'nei.ʃən/: sự phối hợp

Ví dụ: *Companies need to ensure the coordination of all departments*

<sup>(8)</sup>**shuttlecock** /'ʃʌt.əl.kɒk/: trò chơi đá cầu

Ví dụ: *Vietnamese students like to play shuttlecock during break time.*

<sup>(9)</sup>**recess (n)** /rɪ'ses/: thời gian giải lao

Ví dụ: *Students love to play sports during recess instead of sitting in the classroom.*

#### 4. What do young people usually do in groups?

Team sports, group projects at school and work, anything, you name it. I also notice that many young people like to hang out in groups, especially at the movie theatre or the café. There's a saying: the more, the **merrier**<sup>(10)</sup>, so it's understandable why they like to have fun in large groups. Besides, like I've mentioned, there are certain sports like football or volleyball and other tasks which need to be done in groups.

<sup>(10)</sup>**merry (a):** vui vẻ

*Ví dụ: My mother just loves the merry sound of laughter.*



**ZIM**